*Shema TEI za korpus SlovParl v repozitoriju CLARIN.SI*

*The TEI Schema for SlovParl corpus in CLARIN.SI repository*

Andrej Pančurandrej.pancur@inz.si

SlovParl Corpus in CLARIN.SI Repository

This TEI customization file specifies the schema for the SlovParl (Proceedings of the Slovenian Parliament) corpus in CLARIN.SI repository.

# Elements

## <TEI>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resourceLike class. Multiple TEI elements may be combined to form a <teiCorpus> element. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.version](#teidata.version) | | **Note** | The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the *@source* of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5. | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** text |
| **Note** | This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the *@xmlns* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5          version using a name space.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**>    <**p**>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</**p**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>A TEI Document containing four page images </**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>Unpublished demonstration file.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**facsimile**>   <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/>  </**facsimile**> </**TEI**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:ns prefix="tei"  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs"  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/> |
| **Schematron** | <s:ns prefix="rng"  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <classRef key="model.resourceLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element TEI {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute version { text }?,  ( [teiHeader](#TEI.teiHeader), [model.resourceLike](#TEI.model.resourceLike)+ ) } |

## <addName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addName>** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**addName** **type**="epithet">the Great</**addName**>  <**roleName**>Emperor of Prussia</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element addName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <addrLine>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text. |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>60680 USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**addrLine**>  <**ref** **target**="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</**ref**> </**addrLine**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element addrLine { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <address>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **core:** addrLine gap name note postBox postCode street  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName bloc country district forename genName location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc. |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**street**>via Marsala 24</**street**>  <**postCode**>40126</**postCode**>  <**name**>Bologna</**name**>  <**name** **n**="I">Italy</**name**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**addrLine**>Computing Center, MC 135</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>P.O. Box 6998</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>Chicago, IL 60680</**addrLine**>  <**addrLine**>USA</**addrLine**> </**address**> |
| **Example** | <**address**>  <**country** **key**="FR"/>  <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>  <**postCode**>69002</**postCode**>  <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>  <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>  <**street**>   <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**street**> </**address**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element address {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, ( [model.addrPart](#TEI.model.addrPart), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ ) } |

## <affiliation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<affiliation>** contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element. |
| **Example** | <**affiliation**>Junior project officer for the US <**name** **type**="org">National Endowment for    the Humanities</**name**> </**affiliation**> <**affiliation** **notAfter**="1960-01-01"  **notBefore**="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <**orgName**>Australian Journalists Association</**orgName**> </**affiliation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element affiliation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <age>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<age>** specifies the age of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **value** | supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | **Note** | This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed discussion of a person's age in the content of the element | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text. |
| **Example** | <**age** **notAfter**="1986" **value**="2">under 20 in the early eighties</**age**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element age {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute value { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <analytic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<analytic>** (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication. [[3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** author date editor ref respStmt title  **header:** availability idno |
| **Note** | May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order.The <analytic> element may only occur within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item. |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**analytic**>   <**author**>Chesnutt, David</**author**>   <**title**>Historical Editions in the States</**title**>  </**analytic**>  <**monogr**>   <**title** **level**="j">Computers and the Humanities</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**biblScope**>25.6</**biblScope**>    <**date** **when**="1991-12">(December, 1991):</**date**>    <**biblScope**>377–380</**biblScope**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="author"/>   <elementRef key="editor"/>   <elementRef key="respStmt"/>   <elementRef key="title"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <elementRef key="date"/>   <elementRef key="textLang"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>   <elementRef key="availability"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element analytic {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) | [title](#TEI.title) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [date](#TEI.date) | [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [availability](#TEI.availability) )\* } |

## <anchor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<anchor>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [[8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA) [16.4. Correspondence and Alignment](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACS)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list listBibl name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**s**>The anchor is he<**anchor** **xml:id**="A234"/>re somewhere.</**s**> <**s**>Help me find it.<**ptr** **target**="#A234"/> </**s**> |
| **Content model** | <content/> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element anchor { [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global), empty } |

## <appInfo>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<appInfo>** (application information) records information about an application which has edited the TEI file. [[2.3.10. The Application Information Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDAPP)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** application |
| **Example** | <**appInfo**>  <**application** **ident**="Xaira" **version**="1.24">   <**label**>XAIRA Indexer</**label**>   <**ptr** **target**="#P1"/>  </**application**> </**appInfo**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.applicationLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element appInfo { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [model.applicationLike](#TEI.model.applicationLike)+ } |

## <application>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<application>** provides information about an application which has acted upon the document. [[2.3.10. The Application Information Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDAPP)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **version** | supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.versionNumber](#teidata.versionNumber) | | |
| **Member of** | model.applicationLike |
| **Contained by** | **header:** appInfo |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc label p ref |
| **Example** | <**appInfo**>  <**application** **ident**="ImageMarkupTool1"   **notAfter**="2006-06-01" **version**="1.5">   <**label**>Image Markup Tool</**label**>   <**ptr** **target**="#P1"/>   <**ptr** **target**="#P2"/>  </**application**> </**appInfo**>  This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr> elements. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.labelLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element application {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute ident { text },  attribute version { text },  ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+, ( [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike)\* | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\* ) ) } |

## <author>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *@key* or *@ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given. |
| **Example** | <**author**>British Broadcasting Corporation</**author**> <**author**>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</**author**> <**author**>Anonymous</**author**> <**author**>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</**author**> <**author**>  <**persName**>Beaumont, Francis</**persName**> and <**persName**>John Fletcher</**persName**> </**author**> <**author**>  <**orgName** **key**="BBC">British Broadcasting    Corporation</**orgName**>: Radio 3 Network </**author**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element author {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <authority>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** monogr  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**authority**>John Smith</**authority**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element authority { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited) } |

## <availability>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **free** the text is freely available.  **unknown** the status of the text is unknown. [Default]  **restricted** the text is not freely available. | | |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr series  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** licence |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted |
| **Example** | <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available for academic research purposes only.</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="free">  <**p**>In the public domain</**p**> </**availability**> <**availability** **status**="restricted">  <**p**>Available under licence from the publishers.</**p**> </**availability**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **target**="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">   <**p**>The MIT License      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</**p**>   <**p**>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</**p**>   <**p**>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</**p**>   <**p**>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY,      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN      THE SOFTWARE.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element availability {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,  ( [model.availabilityPart](#TEI.model.availabilityPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) )+ } |

## <back>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [[4.7. Back Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSBACK) [4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** divGen gap head list note p  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing  **textstructure:** div |
| **Note** | Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical. |
| **Example** | <**back**>  <**div1** **type**="appendix">   <**head**>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</**head**>   <**p**>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </**p**>  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="epistle">   <**head**>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</**head**>   <**salute**>Sir.</**salute**>   <**p**>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please </**p**>  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="advert">   <**head**>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr      Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</**item**>    <**item** **n**="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations,        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="advert">   <**head**>    <**hi** **rend**="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</**hi**> Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the      Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</**head**>   <**list**>    <**item** **n**="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &amp;c.        2s. 6d</**item**>    <**item** **n**="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</**item**>   </**list**>  </**div1**> </**back**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate minOccurs="0">    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>     <classRef key="model.global"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element back {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  (  [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.pLike.front](#TEI.model.pLike.front) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like),  ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  | ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike), ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )  )?,  ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart), ( [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )?  ) } |

## <bibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl desc head item listBibl meeting note p ref title  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **namesdates:** event location org person personGrp place population state trait  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email gap meeting name note pubPlace publisher ref respStmt series title  **header:** availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listRelation location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the biblPart class |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale,  1990)</**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>. <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>  <**date**>1968</**date**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl** **subtype**="book\_chapter" **type**="article"  **xml:id**="carlin\_2003">  <**author**>   <**name**>    <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>      (<**forename**>Claire</**forename**>)</**name**>  </**author**>, <**title** **level**="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last    congrès</**title**> dans <**bibl** **type**="monogr">   <**title** **level**="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.      Tobin</**title**>, éd.  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Claire</**forename**>     <**surname**>Carlin</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**> et  <**editor**>    <**name**>     <**forename**>Kathleen</**forename**>     <**surname**>Wine</**surname**>    </**name**>   </**editor**>,  <**pubPlace**>Charlottesville, Va.</**pubPlace**>,  <**publisher**>Rookwood Press</**publisher**>,  <**date** **when**="2003">2003</**date**>.  </**bibl**> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>   <classRef key="model.segLike"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bibl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.highlighted](#TEI.model.highlighted) | [model.pPart.data](#TEI.model.pPart.data) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) | [model.segLike](#TEI.model.segLike) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [model.biblPart](#TEI.model.biblPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

## <biblFull>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblFull>** (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item listBibl meeting note p ref title  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **namesdates:** event location org person personGrp place population state trait  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Example** | <**biblFull**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the middle ages      to the present</**title**>   <**author**>Blain, Virginia</**author**>   <**author**>Clements, Patricia</**author**>   <**author**>Grundy, Isobel</**author**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**editionStmt**>   <**edition**>UK edition</**edition**>  </**editionStmt**>  <**extent**>1231 pp</**extent**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**publisher**>Yale University Press</**publisher**>   <**pubPlace**>New Haven and London</**pubPlace**>   <**date**>1990</**date**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No source: this is an original work</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**biblFull**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>    <elementRef key="editionStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="notesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblFull {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  (  (  [titleStmt](#TEI.titleStmt),  [editionStmt](#TEI.editionStmt)?,  [extent](#TEI.extent)?,  [publicationStmt](#TEI.publicationStmt),  [seriesStmt](#TEI.seriesStmt)?,  [notesStmt](#TEI.notesStmt)?  ),  [sourceDesc](#TEI.sourceDesc)\*  ) } |

## <biblScope>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [[3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint monogr series |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | When a single page is being cited, use the *@from* and *@to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *@from* attribute should be used without *@to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference. |
| **Example** | <**biblScope**>pp 12–34</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **from**="12" **to**="34" **unit**="page"/> <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">II</**biblScope**> <**biblScope** **unit**="page">12</**biblScope**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblScope {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.citing.attributes](#TEI.att.citing),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <biblStruct>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<biblStruct>** (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item listBibl meeting note p ref title  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **namesdates:** event location org person personGrp place population state trait  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** analytic citedRange monogr note ref series  **header:** idno |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**monogr**>   <**author**>Blain, Virginia</**author**>   <**author**>Clements, Patricia</**author**>   <**author**>Grundy, Isobel</**author**>   <**title**>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the middle ages      to the present</**title**>   <**edition**>first edition</**edition**>   <**imprint**>    <**publisher**>Yale University Press</**publisher**>    <**pubPlace**>New Haven and London</**pubPlace**>    <**date**>1990</**date**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Schematron** | The use of an <idno> element as a direct child of <biblStruct> is deprecated. Rather, <idno> should appear as a child of a <monogr>, <analytic>, or <series>.  <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="child::tei:idno">WARNING: use of deprecated method — the use of the idno element as a direct child of the biblStruct element will be removed from the TEI on 2016-09-18</sch:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="analytic"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="monogr"/>    <elementRef key="series"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <elementRef key="idno"/>    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>    <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>    <elementRef key="citedRange"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element biblStruct {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [analytic](#TEI.analytic)\*,  ( [monogr](#TEI.monogr), [series](#TEI.series)\* )+,  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [relatedItem](#TEI.relatedItem) | [citedRange](#TEI.citedRange) )\*  ) } |

## <birth>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<birth>** contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**birth**>Before 1920, Midlands region.</**birth**> |
| **Example** | <**birth** **when**="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near <**name** **type**="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</**name**>,  early in the morning of <**date**>10 Dec 1960</**date**> </**birth**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element birth {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <bloc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bloc>** contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**bloc** **type**="union">the European Union</**bloc**> <**bloc** **type**="continent">Africa</**bloc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bloc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <body>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc divGen gap head label list listBibl meeting note p  **header:** biblFull  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace  **spoken:** incident kinesic u vocal writing  **textstructure:** div |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <classRef key="model.common"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <alternate minOccurs="0">      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element body {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) )\* )?,  ( [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )?,  (  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | (  ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  (  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like), ( [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) )\* )+  )?  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

## <c>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<c>** (character) represents a character. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** pc s w  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head item label name note p pubPlace publisher ref street title  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *@type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc. |
| **Example** | <**phr**>  <**c**>M</**c**>  <**c**>O</**c**>  <**c**>A</**c**>  <**c**>I</**c**>  <**w**>doth</**w**>  <**w**>sway</**w**>  <**w**>my</**w**>  <**w**>life</**w**> </**phr**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element c {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.xtext](#TEI.macro.xtext)} |

## <catDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** category |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email name ref title  **header:** idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait |
| **Example** | <**catDesc**>Prose reportage</**catDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**catDesc**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/>  </**textDesc**> </**catDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element catDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.catDescPart](#TEI.model.catDescPart) )\* } |

## <category>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<category>** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** category taxonomy |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc  **header:** catDesc category |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="b1">  <**catDesc**>Prose reportage</**catDesc**> </**category**> |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="b2">  <**catDesc**>Prose </**catDesc**>  <**category** **xml:id**="b11">   <**catDesc**>journalism</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="b12">   <**catDesc**>fiction</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**category**> |
| **Example** | <**category** **xml:id**="LIT">  <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">literatura piękna</**catDesc**>  <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">fiction</**catDesc**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LPROSE">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">proza</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LPOETRY">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">poezja</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">poetry</**catDesc**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="LDRAMA">   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="pl">dramat</**catDesc**>   <**catDesc** **xml:lang**="en">drama</**catDesc**>  </**category**> </**category**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="catDesc"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.descLike"/>     <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="category"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element category {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( ( [catDesc](#TEI.catDesc)+ | ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.glossLike](#TEI.model.glossLike) )\* ), [category](#TEI.category)\* ) } |

## <change>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.4.1. Creation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4C) [11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | points to one or more elements that belong to this change.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** listChange revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note p ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic u vocal writing |
| **Note** | The *@who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *@status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented. |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**> ... </**title**>  <**editor** **xml:id**="LDB">Lou Burnard</**editor**>  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="BZ">   <**resp**>copy editing</**resp**>   <**name**>Brett Zamir</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> <!-- ... --> <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **status**="public" **when**="2008-02-02"   **who**="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</**change**>  <**change** **status**="draft" **when**="2008-01-02"   **who**="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</**change**>  <**change** **n**="P2.2" **when**="1991-12-21"   **who**="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</**change**>  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange**>    <**change** **xml:id**="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</**change**>    <**change** **notBefore**="1880-12-09"     **xml:id**="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly        using green ink</**change**>    <**change** **notBefore**="1881-02-13"     **xml:id**="DRAFT3">Final corrections as        supplied to printer.</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element change {  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute target { list { + } }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

## <citedRange>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<citedRange>** (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [[3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOB)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.pointing (@target) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | When the range cited consists of a single page or other unit, use the *@from* and *@to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is given the *@from* attribute should be used without *@to*. For example, if the citation has ‘p. 3ff’ as a page reference. |
| **Example** | <**citedRange**>pp 12–13</**citedRange**> <**citedRange** **from**="12" **to**="13" **unit**="page"/> <**citedRange** **unit**="volume">II</**citedRange**> <**citedRange** **unit**="page">12</**citedRange**> |
| **Example** | <**bibl**>  <**ptr** **target**="#mueller01"/>, <**citedRange** **target**="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.    4-5</**citedRange**> </**bibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element citedRange {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.citing.attributes](#TEI.att.citing),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <classCode>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification system in use, as defined by for example by a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** imprint  **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udc.org">410</**classCode**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classCode {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute scheme { text },  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <classDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** taxonomy |
| **Example** | <**classDecl**>  <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="LCSH">   <**bibl**>Library of Congress Subject Headings</**bibl**>  </**taxonomy**> </**classDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="#LCSH">   <**term**>Political science</**term**>   <**term**>United States -- Politics and government —      Revolution, 1775-1783</**term**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="taxonomy"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classDecl { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy)+ } |

## <correction>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<correction>** (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **high** the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.  **medium** the text has been checked at least once.  **low** the text has not been checked.  **unknown** the correction status of the text is unknown. [Default] | | | **method** | indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **silent** corrections have been made silently [Default]  **markup** corrections have been represented using markup | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Note** | May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED). |
| **Example** | <**correction**>  <**p**>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user    defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century    Dictionary.</**p**> </**correction**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element correction {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

## <country>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<country>** contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |
| **Example** | <**country** **key**="DK">Denmark</**country**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element country {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <date>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<date>** contains a date in any format. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.durationatt.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head imprint item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1980-02">early February 1980</**date**> |
| **Example** | Given on the <**date** **when**="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day  of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic  the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **when**="1990-09">September 1990</**date**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element date {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.duration.attributes](#TEI.att.duration),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

## <death>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<death>** contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**death** **when**="1902-10-01"/> |
| **Example** | <**death** **when**="1960-12-10">Passed away near <**name** **type**="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</**name**>, after suffering from cerebral palsy. </**death**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element death {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <desc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [[22.4.1. Description of Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDcrystalsCEdc)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.descLike model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc gap head item meeting note p ref title  **header:** application category change licence tagUsage taxonomy  **namesdates:** event location org place population relation state trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email label list listBibl name ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait |
| **Note** | TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb. |
| **Example** | <**desc**>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute,  attribute value, class, or entity.</**desc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element desc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |

## <distributor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<distributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**> <**distributor**>Redwood and Burn Ltd</**distributor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element distributor { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <district>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<district>** contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**district** **type**="ward">Jericho</**district**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**district** **type**="area">South Side</**district**>  <**settlement**>Chicago</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element district {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <div>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [[4.1. Divisions of the Body](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Legal values are:** | **contents** table of contents  **sp** (speech) parliamentary speech at the central lectern  **inter** (interruption) recorded interruptions of parliamentary speech at the central lectern  **preface** preliminary data about session | | |
| **Member of** | model.divLike |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc divGen gap head label list listBibl meeting note p  **header:** biblFull  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace  **spoken:** incident kinesic u vocal writing  **textstructure:** div |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**div** **type**="part">   <**head**>Fallacies of Authority</**head**>   <**p**>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</**p**>   <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">    <**head**>The Nature of Authority</**head**>    <**p**>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest        happiness of the greatest number [...]</**p**>    <**div** **n**="1.1" **type**="section">     <**head**>Analysis of Authority</**head**>     <**p**>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to          authority [...] </**p**>    </**div**>    <**div** **n**="1.2" **type**="section">     <**head**>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</**head**>     <**p**>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...] </**p**>    </**div**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**body**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="0">    <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>      </alternate>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.common"/>       <classRef key="model.global"        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <alternate maxOccurs="1"        minOccurs="1">        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>       <classRef key="model.global"        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      </sequence>     </sequence>    </alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element div {  attribute type { "contents" | "sp" | "inter" | "preface" },  (  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  | (  ( [model.common](#TEI.model.common), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+,  ( ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.divGenLike](#TEI.model.divGenLike) ), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\*  )?  ) } |

## <divGen>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [[3.8.2. Index Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONOIX)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.  **toc** a table of contents  **figlist** a list of figures  **tablist** a list of tables | | **Note** | Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive. | | |
| **Member of** | model.divGenLike model.frontPart |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **core:** head |
| **Note** | This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software. |
| **Example** | One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the *@indexName* attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:  <**back**>  <**div1** **type**="backmat">   <**head**>Bibliography</**head**> <!-- ... -->  </**div1**>  <**div1** **type**="backmat">   <**head**>Indices</**head**>   <**divGen** **n**="Index Nominum" **type**="NAMES"/>   <**divGen** **n**="Index Rerum" **type**="THINGS"/>  </**div1**> </**back**> |
| **Example** | Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:  <**front**> <!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->  <**divGen** **type**="toc"/>  <**div**>   <**head**>Preface</**head**>   <**p**> ... </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.headLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element divGen {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\* } |

## <edition>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<edition>** describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**edition**>First edition <**date**>Oct 1990</**date**> </**edition**> <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element edition { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <editionStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [[2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor meeting p respStmt  **header:** edition funder principal sponsor |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**edition** **n**="S2">Students' edition</**edition**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Adapted by </**resp**>   <**name**>Elizabeth Kirk</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**editionStmt**>  <**p**>First edition, <**date**>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</**date**>  </**p**> </**editionStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="edition"/>    <classRef key="model.respLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editionStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [edition](#TEI.edition), [model.respLike](#TEI.model.respLike)\* ) ) } |

## <editor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl monogr series  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted.Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. |
| **Example** | <**editor**>Eric Johnson</**editor**> <**editor** **role**="illustrator">John Tenniel</**editor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editor {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <editorialDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** correction hyphenation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**normalization**>   <**p**>All words converted to Modern American spelling using      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary   </**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**quotation** **marks**="all">   <**p**>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing      quotation marks converted to &amp;cdq;.</**p**>  </**quotation**> </**editorialDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>   <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element editorialDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.editorialDeclPart](#TEI.model.editorialDeclPart) )+ } |

## <education>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<education>** contains a description of the educational experience of a person. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**education**>Left school at age 16</**education**> |
| **Example** | <**education** **from**="1986-01-01"  **to**="1990-06-30">Attended <**name**>Cherwell School</**name**> </**education**> |
| **Example** | <**education** **notAfter**="1690-06"  **notBefore**="1685-07">Anthony Hammond  smuggled her into the University of Cambridge, where she was  disguised as his male cousin, Jack. She remained there for some  months learning grammar, logic, rhetoric, and ethics</**education**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element education {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <email>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<email>** (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in [RFC 2822](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2822) |
| **Example** | <**email**>membership@tei-c.org</**email**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element email { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <encodingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [[2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl projectDesc samplingDecl tagsDecl |
| **Example** | <**encodingDesc**>  <**p**>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No    formatting or layout information preserved.</**p**> </**encodingDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element encodingDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [model.encodingDescPart](#TEI.model.encodingDescPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) )+ } |

## <event>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<event>** contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (@type) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **where** | indicates the location of an event by pointing to a <place> element   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** event listEvent org person personGrp place |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull  **namesdates:** event |
| **Example** | <**person**>  <**event** **type**="mat" **when**="1972-10-12">   <**label**>matriculation</**label**>  </**event**>  <**event** **type**="grad" **when**="1975-06-23">   <**label**>graduation</**label**>  </**event**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="event"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element event {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  attribute where { text }?,  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) )\*,  [event](#TEI.event)\*  ) } |

## <extent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [[2.2.3. Type and Extent of File](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD23) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [10.7.1. Object Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ms.html#msph1)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**extent**>3200 sentences</**extent**> <**extent**>between 10 and 20 Mb</**extent**> <**extent**>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</**extent**> |
| **Example** | The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.  <**extent**>  <**measure** **quantity**="4.2" **unit**="MiB">About four megabytes</**measure**>  <**measure** **quantity**="245" **unit**="pages">245 pages of source    material</**measure**> </**extent**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element extent { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <faith>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<faith>** specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**faith**>protestant</**faith**> |
| **Example** | <**faith** **ref**="http://dbpedia.org/page/Manichaeism">Manichaeism</**faith**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element faith {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <fileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |
| **Example** | <**fileDesc**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The shortest possible TEI document</**title**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**p**>Distributed as part of TEI P5</**p**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**fileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>    <elementRef key="editionStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="notesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  (  [titleStmt](#TEI.titleStmt),  [editionStmt](#TEI.editionStmt)?,  [extent](#TEI.extent)?,  [publicationStmt](#TEI.publicationStmt),  [seriesStmt](#TEI.seriesStmt)?,  [notesStmt](#TEI.notesStmt)?  ),  [sourceDesc](#TEI.sourceDesc)+  ) } |

## <floruit>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<floruit>** contains information about a person's period of activity. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**floruit** **notAfter**="1100" **notBefore**="1066"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element floruit {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <forename>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<forename>** contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**roleName**>Ex-President</**roleName**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname**>Bush</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element forename {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <front>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL) [4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** divGen gap head meeting note p  **linking:** anchor timeline  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing  **textstructure:** div |
| **Note** | Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical. |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**epigraph**>   <**quote**>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla      pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <**q** **xml:lang**="gr">Σίβυλλα τί        θέλεις</**q**>; respondebat illa: <**q** **xml:lang**="gr">ὰποθανεῖν θέλω.</**q**>   </**quote**>  </**epigraph**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>For Ezra Pound <**q** **xml:lang**="it">il miglior fabbro.</**q**>   </**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="dedication">   <**p**>To our three selves</**p**>  </**div**>  <**div** **type**="preface">   <**head**>Author's Note</**head**>   <**p**>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons      she has done so inadvertently. ...</**p**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Example** | <**front**>  <**div** **type**="abstract">   <**div**>    <**head**> BACKGROUND:</**head**>    <**p**>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because        of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> OBJECTIVE:</**head**>    <**p**>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level        food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> DESIGN:</**head**>    <**p**>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition        Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.        Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of        Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight        child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed with        five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical        measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m2) greater than        or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the Centers        for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic        regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and        survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity        and food insecurity.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> RESULTS:</**head**>    <**p**>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity        for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to        2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95%        CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated        with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</**p**>   </**div**>   <**div**>    <**head**> CONCLUSIONS:</**head**>    <**p**>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of        obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal        food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate        food-insecurity measures in children.</**p**>   </**div**>  </**div**> </**front**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <sequence>      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>       <classRef key="model.global"/>      </alternate>     </sequence>     <sequence>      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="0">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>       <classRef key="model.global"/>      </alternate>     </sequence>    </alternate>    <sequence minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>      <classRef key="model.global"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element front {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  ( [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [model.pLike.front](#TEI.model.pLike.front) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  (  (  [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like),  ( [model.div1Like](#TEI.model.div1Like) | [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  | (  [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike),  ( [model.divLike](#TEI.model.divLike) | [model.frontPart](#TEI.model.frontPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*  )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* )?  )?  ) } |

## <funder>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<funder>** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors, who provide intellectual support and authority. |
| **Example** | <**funder**>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</**funder**> <**funder**>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</**funder**> <**funder**>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</**funder**> <**funder**>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</**funder**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element funder {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <gap>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<gap>** indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [[3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COEDADD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.analytic (@ana)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **reason** | gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.edit |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section [11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB) for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion. |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="4" **reason**="illegible"  **unit**="chars"/> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **quantity**="1" **reason**="sampling"  **unit**="essay"/> |
| **Example** | <**del**>  <**gap** **atLeast**="4" **atMost**="8"   **reason**="illegible" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> |
| **Example** | <**gap** **extent**="unknown" **reason**="lost"  **unit**="lines"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gap {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  attribute reason { list { + } }?,  ( [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) | [model.certLike](#TEI.model.certLike) )\* } |

## <genName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<genName>** (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Charles</**forename**>  <**genName**>II</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**surname**>Pitt</**surname**>  <**genName**>the Younger</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element genName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <geo>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geo>** (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [[13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGva)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI header, using the *@decls* attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. |
| **Example** | <**geoDecl** **datum**="WGS84" **xml:id**="WGS">World Geodetic System</**geoDecl**> <**geoDecl** **datum**="OSGB36" **xml:id**="OS">Ordnance Survey</**geoDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**location**>  <**desc**>A tombstone plus six lines of    Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side    of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the    Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</**desc**>  <**geo** **decls**="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</**geo**>  <**geo** **decls**="#OS">SK 97481 70947</**geo**> </**location**> |
| **Example** | <**geo**>41.687142 -74.870109</**geo**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geo { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), text } |

## <geoDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geoDecl>** (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the <geo> element elsewhere within the document. [[2.3.8. The Geographic Coordinates Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HDGDECL)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datum** | supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. [Default]  **MGRS** (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on  **OSGB36** (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.  **ED50** (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system. | | |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**geoDecl** **datum**="OSGB36"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geoDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <head>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [[4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:base, @xml:id, @xml:lang) |
| **Member of** | model.headLike model.pLike.front |
| **Contained by** | **core:** divGen list listBibl  **namesdates:** event listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation org place population state trait  **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section. |
| **Example** | The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:  <**div1** **n**="I" **type**="book">  <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</**head**>  <**div2** **type**="section">   <**head**>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</**head**>   <**p**>Proposing as I do ...</**p**>   <**p**>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve      years passed.</**p**>   <**trailer**>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</**trailer**>  </**div2**> </**div1**> |
| **Example** | The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:  With a few exceptions, connectives are equally  useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. <**list** **rend**="bulleted">  <**head**>Connectives</**head**>  <**item**>above</**item**>  <**item**>accordingly</**item**>  <**item**>across from</**item**>  <**item**>adjacent to</**item**>  <**item**>again</**item**>  <**item**> <!-- ... -->  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element head {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  (  text  | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

## <hyphenation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<hyphenation>** summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **eol** | (end-of-line) indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.  **some** end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases. [Default]  **hard** all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.  **none** all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line. | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**hyphenation** **eol**="some">  <**p**>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</**p**> </**hyphenation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element hyphenation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

## <idno>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26) [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting monogr name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl idno language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno |
| **Note** | <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *@type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI. |
| **Example** | <**idno** **type**="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="ISSN">0143-3385</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="DOI">10.1000/123</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="Wing">C695</**idno**> <**idno** **type**="oldCat">  <**g** **ref**="#sym"/>345 </**idno**>  In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element idno {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) )\* } |

## <imprint>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<imprint>** groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** monogr |
| **May contain** | **core:** biblScope date gap note pubPlace publisher respStmt  **header:** classCode distributor  **linking:** anchor timeline  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="classCode"/>    <elementRef key="catRef"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate>     <classRef key="model.imprintPart"/>     <classRef key="model.dateLike"/>    </alternate>    <elementRef key="respStmt"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element imprint {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  ( [classCode](#TEI.classCode) | [catRef](#TEI.catRef) )\*,  ( ( [model.imprintPart](#TEI.model.imprintPart) | [model.dateLike](#TEI.model.dateLike) ), [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt)\*, [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  ) } |

## <incident>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<incident>** marks any phenomenon or occurrence, not necessarily vocalized or communicative, for example incidental noises or other events affecting communication. [[8.3.3. Vocal, Kinesic, Incident](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAVO)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.typed (@type) att.ascribed (@who) att.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.analytic (@ana) |
| **Member of** | model.global.spoken |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Example** | <**incident**>  <**desc**>ceiling collapses</**desc**> </**incident**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element incident {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\* } |

## <item>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<item>** contains one component of a list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI) [2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.linking (synch, sameAs, copyOf, next, prev, @corresp) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note p ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic u vocal writing |
| **Note** | May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *@n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *@n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *@n*. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**head**>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</**head**>  <**item** **n**="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</**item**>  <**item** **n**="4.6">The priest Cato.</**item**>  <**item**> ...</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element item {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

## <keywords>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** textClass |
| **May contain** | **core:** list |
| **Note** | Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *@scheme* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**keywords** **scheme**="http://classificationweb.net">  <**term**>Babbage, Charles</**term**>  <**term**>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Example** | <**keywords**>  <**term**>Fermented beverages</**term**>  <**term**>Central Andes</**term**>  <**term**>Schinus molle</**term**>  <**term**>Molle beer</**term**>  <**term**>Indigenous peoples</**term**>  <**term**>Ethnography</**term**>  <**term**>Archaeology</**term**> </**keywords**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <elementRef key="term"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="list"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element keywords {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute scheme { text }?,  ( [term](#TEI.term)+ | [list](#TEI.list) ) } |

## <kinesic>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<kinesic>** marks any communicative phenomenon, not necessarily vocalized, for example a gesture, frown, etc. [[8.3.3. Vocal, Kinesic, Incident](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAVO)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.typed (@type) att.ascribed (@who) att.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.analytic (@ana) |
| **Member of** | model.global.spoken |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Example** | <**kinesic** **dur**="PT1.5S" **iterated**="true"  **type**="reinforcing">  <**desc**>nodding head vigorously</**desc**> </**kinesic**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element kinesic {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\* } |

## <label>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<label>** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item list meeting note p ref title  **header:** application change licence tagUsage  **namesdates:** event location org place population state trait  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *@xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:  <**list** **type**="gloss" **xml:lang**="enm">  <**head** **xml:lang**="en">Vocabulary</**head**>  <**headLabel** **xml:lang**="en">Middle English</**headLabel**>  <**headItem** **xml:lang**="en">New English</**headItem**>  <**label**>nu</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">now</**item**>  <**label**>lhude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">loudly</**item**>  <**label**>bloweth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">blooms</**item**>  <**label**>med</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">meadow</**item**>  <**label**>wude</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">wood</**item**>  <**label**>awe</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">ewe</**item**>  <**label**>lhouth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">lows</**item**>  <**label**>sterteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <**cit**>    <**ref**>Chaucer, K.T.644</**ref**>    <**quote**>a courser, <**term**>sterting</**term**>as the fyr</**quote**>   </**cit**>  </**item**>  <**label**>verteth</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="la">pedit</**item**>  <**label**>murie</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">merrily</**item**>  <**label**>swik</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">cease</**item**>  <**label**>naver</**label**>  <**item** **xml:lang**="en">never</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *@n* attribute on the <item> element:  I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred  in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos. <**list** **rend**="runon" **type**="ordered">  <**label**>(1)</**label**>  <**item**>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</**item**>  <**label**>(2) </**label**>  <**item**>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the    printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:  <**list** **type**="gloss">  <**label**>March 1757.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</**item**>  <**label**>March 8th.</**label**>  <**item**>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</**item**>  <**label**>June.</**label**>  <**item**>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <**quote** **xml:lang**="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus      amori.</**quote**>  </**item**>  <**label**>August.</**label**>  <**item**>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</**item**> </**list**>  Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice. |
| **Example** | Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.  <**p**>[...] <**lb**/>&amp; n’entrer en mauuais &amp; mal-heu- <**lb**/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente- <**lb**/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt <**lb**/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit <**label** **place**="margin">Puiſſance maritale    entre les Romains.</**label**>  <**lb**/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma- <**lb**/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs <**lb**/> la puiſſance du mary, s’il n’eſt eſcla- <**lb**/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce <**lb**/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en- <**lb**/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance  [...]</**p**>  In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element label { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <langKnowledge>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langKnowledge>** (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of <langKnown> elements. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **tags** | supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.language](#teidata.language) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no <langKnown> children. Its values are language ‘tags’ as defined in [RFC 4646](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc4646.txt) or its successor | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **namesdates:** langKnown |
| **Example** | <**langKnowledge** **tags**="en-GB fr">  <**p**>British English and French</**p**> </**langKnowledge**> |
| **Example** | <**langKnowledge**>  <**langKnown** **level**="H" **tag**="en-GB">British English</**langKnown**>  <**langKnown** **level**="M" **tag**="fr">French</**langKnown**> </**langKnowledge**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <elementRef key="langKnown"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langKnowledge {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute tags { list { + } }?,  ( [precision](#TEI.precision)\*, ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | [langKnown](#TEI.langKnown)+ ) ) } |

## <langKnown>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langKnown>** (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **tag** | supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | **Note** | The value for this attribute should be a language ‘tag’ as defined in [BCP 47](http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). | | | **level** | a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** langKnowledge |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**langKnown** **level**="H" **tag**="en-GB">British English</**langKnown**> <**langKnown** **level**="M" **tag**="fr">French</**langKnown**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langKnown {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute tag { text },  attribute level { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <langUsage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **header:** language |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="fr-CA" **usage**="60">Québecois</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-CA" **usage**="20">Canadian business English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="en-GB" **usage**="20">British English</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <elementRef key="language"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langUsage {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [language](#TEI.language)+ ) } |

## <language>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [[2.4.2. Language Usage](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD41)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ident** | (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in [BCP 47](http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47) which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *@xml:lang* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | | **usage** | specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [nonNegativeInteger](#nonNegativeInteger) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** langUsage |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element. |
| **Example** | <**langUsage**>  <**language** **ident**="en-US" **usage**="75">modern American English</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="i-az-Arab" **usage**="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</**language**>  <**language** **ident**="x-lap" **usage**="05">Pig Latin</**language**> </**langUsage**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element language {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute ident { text },  attribute usage { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <licence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.pointing (@target) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.availabilityPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** availability |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note p ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic u vocal writing |
| **Note** | A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *@target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from* or *@to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence. |
| **Example** | <**licence** **target**="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence </**licence**> |
| **Example** | <**availability**>  <**licence** **notBefore**="2013-01-01"   **target**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/">   <**p**>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence      applies to this document.</**p**>   <**p**>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</**p**>  </**licence**> </**availability**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element licence {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

## <list>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<list>** contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item meeting note p ref title  **header:** change keywords licence revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** back body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** gap head item label meeting note  **linking:** anchor timeline  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings. |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="numbered">  <**item**>a butcher</**item**>  <**item**>a baker</**item**>  <**item**>a candlestick maker, with  <**list** **rend**="bulleted">    <**item**>rings on his fingers</**item**>    <**item**>bells on his toes</**item**>   </**list**>  </**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="bulleted" **type**="syllogism">  <**item**>All Cretans are liars.</**item**>  <**item**>Epimenides is a Cretan.</**item**>  <**item**>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | <**list** **rend**="simple" **type**="litany">  <**item**>God save us from drought.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from pestilence.</**item**>  <**item**>God save us from wickedness in high places.</**item**>  <**item**>Praise be to God.</**item**> </**list**> |
| **Example** | The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):  <**div1** **type**="section">  <**head**>Athelstan's Ordinance</**head**>  <**list** **rend**="numbered">   <**item** **n**="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over      eightpence.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his          wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account — or to          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him          that he will desist for ever.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          or to bring him back there.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild,          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day,          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him          down as a thief.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds      his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and      120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as      often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had      refused him justice.   <**list** **rend**="numbered">     <**item** **n**="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</**item**>     <**item** **n**="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.</**item**>    </**list**>   </**item**>   <**item** **n**="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</**item**>  </**list**> </**div1**>  Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired. |
| **Example** | <**p**>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they  confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards  inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy  Cross. <**list** **rend**="simple">   <**item**>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with      the sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of      the Holy Cross.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</**item**>   <**item**>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</**item**>  </**list**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"> <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="item"/>     <classRef key="model.global"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="headLabel"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="headItem"      minOccurs="0"/>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <elementRef key="label"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>      <elementRef key="item"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element list {  ( [model.divTop](#TEI.model.divTop) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\*,  (  ( [item](#TEI.item), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+  | ( [headLabel](#TEI.headLabel)?, [headItem](#TEI.headItem)?, ( [label](#TEI.label), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*, [item](#TEI.item), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )+ )  ),  ( [model.divBottom](#TEI.model.divBottom), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )\* } |

## <listBibl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [[3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBITY) [2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item listBibl meeting note p ref title  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy  **namesdates:** event location org person personGrp place population state trait  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct head listBibl  **header:** biblFull  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** listRelation relation |
| **Example** | <**listBibl**>  <**head**>Works consulted</**head**>  <**bibl**>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)  </**bibl**>  <**biblStruct**>   <**analytic**>    <**title**>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>   </**analytic**>   <**monogr**>    <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>    <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>    <**imprint**>     <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>     <**date**>1968</**date**>    </**imprint**>   </**monogr**>  </**biblStruct**> </**listBibl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listBibl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.milestoneLike](#TEI.model.milestoneLike) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

## <listChange>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listChange>** groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PH-changes)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ordered** | indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Default** | true | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** listChange revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** change listChange |
| **Note** | When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text. |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc**>  <**listChange**>   <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**>   <**change** **when**="1991-11-02" **who**="#MSM"> completed first draft </**change**>  </**listChange**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**creation**>   <**listChange** **ordered**="true">    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using pencil</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further revisions by        Goethe using ink</**change**>    <**change** **xml:id**="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,        probably at a later stage</**change**>   </**listChange**>  </**creation**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="listChange"/>   <elementRef key="change"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listChange {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute ordered { text }?,  ( [listChange](#TEI.listChange) | [change](#TEI.change) )+ } |

## <listEvent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item meeting note p ref title  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage  **namesdates:** listEvent org person personGrp place  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** back body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** head  **namesdates:** event listEvent listRelation relation |
| **Example** | <**listEvent**>  <**head**>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</**head**>  <**event** **when**="1861-09-19" **xml:id**="event01">   <**label**>Barbourville</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of      the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox      County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate      Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in      the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who      rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,      which was finally thwarted at the <**ref** **target**="#event02">Battle of        Camp Wildcat</**ref**> in October.</**desc**>  </**event**>  <**event** **when**="1861-10-21" **xml:id**="event02">   <**label**>Camp Wild Cat</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp      Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil      War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky      during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The      battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked      the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</**desc**>  </**event**>  <**event** **from**="1864-06-11" **to**="1864-06-12"   **xml:id**="event03">   <**label**>Cynthiana</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar’s Bridge) was an engagement      during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,      in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of      Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into      Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the      raiders and saved the town from capture.</**desc**>  </**event**> </**listEvent**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="event"/>    <elementRef key="listEvent"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listEvent {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, ( [event](#TEI.event) | [listEvent](#TEI.listEvent) )+, ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\* ) } |

## <listOrg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item meeting note p ref title  **corpus:** particDesc  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage  **namesdates:** listOrg org  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** back body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** head  **namesdates:** listOrg listRelation org relation |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listOrg**>  <**head**>Libyans</**head**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Adyrmachidae</**orgName**>   <**desc**>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but      use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of      bronze [...]</**desc**>  </**org**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Nasamonians</**orgName**>   <**desc**>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up      the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the      palms [...]</**desc**>  </**org**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Garamantians</**orgName**>   <**desc**>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no      weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</**desc**> <!-- ... -->  </**org**> </**listOrg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="org"/>    <elementRef key="listOrg"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listOrg {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, ( [org](#TEI.org) | [listOrg](#TEI.listOrg) )+, ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\* ) } |

## <listPerson>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [15.2. Contextual Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item meeting note p ref title  **corpus:** particDesc  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage  **namesdates:** listPerson org  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** back body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** head  **namesdates:** listPerson listRelation org person personGrp relation |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson** **type**="respondents">  <**personGrp** **xml:id**="PXXX"/>  <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="2" **xml:id**="P1234"/>  <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="1" **xml:id**="P4332"/>  <**listRelation**>   <**relation** **mutual**="#P1234 #P4332"    **name**="spouse" **type**="personal"/>  </**listRelation**> </**listPerson**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.personLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPerson"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPerson {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.personLike](#TEI.model.personLike) | [listPerson](#TEI.listPerson) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

## <listPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [13.3.4. Places](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc head item meeting note p ref title  **corpus:** settingDesc  **header:** change licence sourceDesc tagUsage  **namesdates:** listPlace org place  **spoken:** writing  **textstructure:** back body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** head  **namesdates:** listPlace listRelation place relation |
| **Example** | <**listPlace** **type**="offshoreIslands">  <**place**>   <**placeName**>La roche qui pleure</**placeName**>  </**place**>  <**place**>   <**placeName**>Ile aux cerfs</**placeName**>  </**place**> </**listPlace**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPlace {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  ( [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [listPlace](#TEI.listPlace) )+,  ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )\*  ) } |

## <listRelation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listRelation>** provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [[13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl listBibl  **namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **May contain** | **core:** head p  **namesdates:** listRelation relation |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson**>  <**person** **xml:id**="pp1"> <!-- data about person pp1 -->  </**person**>  <**person** **xml:id**="pp2"> <!-- data about person pp1 -->  </**person**> <!-- more person (pp3, pp4) elements here --> </**listPerson**> <**listRelation** **type**="personal">  <**relation** **active**="#pp1 #pp2" **name**="parent"   **passive**="#pp3 #pp4"/>  <**relation** **mutual**="#pp1 #pp2" **name**="spouse"/> </**listRelation**> <**listRelation** **type**="social">  <**relation** **active**="#pp1" **name**="employer"   **passive**="#pp3 #pp5 #pp6 #pp7"/> </**listRelation**>  The persons with identifiers pp1 and p2 are the parents of pp3 and pp4; they are also married to each other; pp1 is the employer of pp3, pp5, pp6, and pp7. |
| **Example** | <**listRelation**>  <**p**>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</**p**> </**listRelation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="relation"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listRelation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  ( [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*, ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike) | ( [relation](#TEI.relation) | [listRelation](#TEI.listRelation) )+ ) ) } |

## <locale>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<locale>** contains a brief informal description of the kind of place concerned, for example: a room, a restaurant, a park bench, etc. [[15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.settingPart |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** setting |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**locale**>a fashionable restaurant</**locale**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element locale { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited) } |

## <location>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<location>** defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [[13.3.4. Places](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl biblStruct desc email label listBibl note  **header:** biblFull  **namesdates:** affiliation bloc country district geo placeName region settlement |
| **Example** | <**place**>  <**placeName**>Abbey Dore</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**geo**>51.969604 -2.893146</**geo**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Example** | <**place** **type**="building" **xml:id**="BGbuilding">  <**placeName**>Brasserie Georges</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**country** **key**="FR"/>   <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>   <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>   <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>   <**placeName** **type**="street">    <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**placeName**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Example** | <**place** **type**="imaginary">  <**placeName**>Atlantis</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**offset**>beyond</**offset**>   <**placeName**>The Pillars of <**persName**>Hercules</**persName**>   </**placeName**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="precision"/>   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/>   <classRef key="model.offsetLike"/>   <classRef key="model.measureLike"/>   <classRef key="model.addressLike"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element location {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision) | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.placeNamePart](#TEI.model.placeNamePart) | [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) | [model.measureLike](#TEI.model.measureLike) | [model.addressLike](#TEI.model.addressLike) | [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\* } |

## <meeting>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<meeting>** contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or preamble to publications emanating from it. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.divWrapper model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl list monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt  **textstructure:** body div front |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email label list listBibl name ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait |
| **Example** | <**div**>  <**meeting**>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual Criticism, Aachen,    June 1998.</**meeting**>  <**list** **type**="attendance">   <**head**>List of Participants</**head**>   <**item**>    <**persName**>...</**persName**>   </**item**>   <**item**>    <**persName**>...</**persName**>   </**item**> <!--...-->  </**list**>  <**p**>...</**p**> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element meeting {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |

## <monogr>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<monogr>** (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [[3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** author biblScope editor imprint meeting note ref respStmt title  **header:** authority availability edition extent funder idno sponsor |
| **Note** | May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order.The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item. |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct**>  <**analytic**>   <**author**>Chesnutt, David</**author**>   <**title**>Historical Editions in the States</**title**>  </**analytic**>  <**monogr**>   <**title** **level**="j">Computers and the Humanities</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**date** **when**="1991-12">(December, 1991):</**date**>   </**imprint**>   <**biblScope**>25.6</**biblScope**>   <**biblScope** **from**="377" **to**="380" **unit**="page">377–380</**biblScope**>  </**monogr**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Example** | <**biblStruct** **type**="book">  <**monogr**>   <**author**>    <**persName**>     <**forename**>Leo Joachim</**forename**>     <**surname**>Frachtenberg</**surname**>    </**persName**>   </**author**>   <**title** **level**="m" **type**="main">Lower Umpqua Texts</**title**>   <**imprint**>    <**pubPlace**>New York</**pubPlace**>    <**publisher**>Columbia University Press</**publisher**>    <**date**>1914</**date**>   </**imprint**>  </**monogr**>  <**series**>   <**title** **level**="s" **type**="main">Columbia University Contributions to      Anthropology</**title**>   <**biblScope** **unit**="volume">4</**biblScope**>  </**series**> </**biblStruct**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate minOccurs="0">    <sequence>     <alternate>      <elementRef key="author"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="meeting"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="author"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="meeting"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>     <elementRef key="title"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>      <elementRef key="idno"/>      <elementRef key="textLang"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <elementRef key="title"/>      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>      <elementRef key="idno"/>     </alternate>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="textLang"/>      <elementRef key="author"/>      <elementRef key="editor"/>      <elementRef key="meeting"/>      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="authority"/>     <elementRef key="idno"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="availability"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="edition"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="idno"/>     <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>     <elementRef key="editor"/>     <elementRef key="sponsor"/>     <elementRef key="funder"/>     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="imprint"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="imprint"/>    <elementRef key="extent"/>    <elementRef key="biblScope"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element monogr {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  (  (  ( [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [meeting](#TEI.meeting) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) ),  ( [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [meeting](#TEI.meeting) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*,  [title](#TEI.title)+,  ( [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*  )  | (  ( [title](#TEI.title) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) )+,  ( [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [author](#TEI.author) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [meeting](#TEI.meeting) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*  )  | ( [authority](#TEI.authority), [idno](#TEI.idno) )  )?,  [availability](#TEI.availability)\*,  [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike)\*,  (  [edition](#TEI.edition),  ( [idno](#TEI.idno) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [sponsor](#TEI.sponsor) | [funder](#TEI.funder) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) )\*  )\*,  [imprint](#TEI.imprint),  ( [imprint](#TEI.imprint) | [extent](#TEI.extent) | [biblScope](#TEI.biblScope) )\*  ) } |

## <name>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [[3.5.1. Referring Strings](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp respStmt street title  **corpus:** locale setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included. |
| **Example** | <**name** **type**="person">Thomas Hoccleve</**name**> <**name** **type**="place">Villingaholt</**name**> <**name** **type**="org">Vetus Latina Institut</**name**> <**name** **ref**="#HOC001" **type**="person">Occleve</**name**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element name {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <nameLink>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>van der</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Tronck</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Alfred</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>de</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Musset</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nameLink {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <namespace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<namespace>** supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.namespace](#teidata.namespace) | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** tagsDecl |
| **May contain** | **header:** tagUsage |
| **Example** | <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="28" **render**="#it"   **withId**="2"> Used only to mark English words    italicized in the copy text </**tagUsage**> </**namespace**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="tagUsage"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element namespace { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), attribute name { text }, [tagUsage](#TEI.tagUsage)+ } |

## <nationality>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nationality>** contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**nationality** **key**="US" **notBefore**="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in 1966</**nationality**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nationality {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <normalization>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<normalization>** indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **source** | indicates a bibliographic description or other resource documenting the principles underlying the normalization carried out.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **method** | indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **silent** normalization made silently [Default]  **markup** normalization represented using markup | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**editorialDecl**>  <**normalization** **method**="markup">   <**p**>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to modern      20th century typographical practice, the <**gi**>choice</**gi**> element has been used to      enclose <**gi**>orig</**gi**> and <**gi**>reg</**gi**> elements giving the original and new values      respectively. ... </**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**normalization** **method**="silent">   <**p**>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero spaces;      spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</**p**>  </**normalization**>  <**normalization** **source**="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">   <**p**>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th      Collegiate dictionary.</**p**>  </**normalization**> </**editorialDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element normalization {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute source { text }?,  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

## <note>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<note>** contains a note or annotation. [[3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONONO) [2.2.6. The Notes Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICON) [9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DITPNO)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Legal values are:** | **location** the location of the speaker, who was not on the podium  **speaker** the name and possible description of a speaker  **date** date of the session  **president** chairman of a meeting  **comment** comment of parliamentary reporter  **time** the date and time of the beginning and end of the debate  **quorum** the presence of the members of parliament  **vote** counting votes of a member of parliament  **debate** comments on the conduct of debates | | |
| **Member of** | model.noteLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list monogr name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence notesStmt principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname trait  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note p ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic u vocal writing |
| **Example** | In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":  And yet it is not only  in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  painterly <**note** **place**="bottom" **resp**="#MDMH"  **type**="gloss">  <**term** **xml:lang**="de">Malerisch</**term**>. This word has, in the German, two  distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,  the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid  confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <**mentioned**>picturesque</**mentioned**> and <**mentioned**>painterly</**mentioned**> respectively. </**note**> style of the  Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this  psychological significance.  For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="MDMH">  <**resp**>translation from German to English</**resp**>  <**name**>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | The global *@n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:  Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the  family during the second half of the eleventh century, <**note** **anchored**="true" **n**="126"> The  alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to  Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </**note**> is well known from Geniza documents  published by Jacob Mann.  However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element note {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  attribute type  {  "location"  | "speaker"  | "date"  | "president"  | "comment"  | "time"  | "quorum"  | "vote"  | "debate"  }?,  [macro.specialPara](#TEI.macro.specialPara)} |

## <notesStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<notesStmt>** (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [[2.2.6. The Notes Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD27) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** note |
| **Note** | Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note. |
| **Example** | <**notesStmt**>  <**note**>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</**note**>  <**note**>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</**note**> </**notesStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>   <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element notesStmt { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [relatedItem](#TEI.relatedItem) )+ } |

## <occupation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<occupation>** contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | indicates the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by supplying the identifier of a <taxonomy> element, or pointing to some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **code** | identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | <**occupation**>accountant</**occupation**> |
| **Example** | <**occupation** **code**="#acc"  **scheme**="#occupationtaxonomy">accountant</**occupation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element occupation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  attribute scheme { text }?,  attribute code { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <org>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, family group, or political party, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** particDesc  **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl name note p  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor  **namesdates:** addName bloc country district event forename genName listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait |
| **Example** | <**org** **xml:id**="JAMs">  <**orgName**>Justified Ancients of Mummu</**orgName**>  <**desc**>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <**persName**>Hagbard      Celine</**persName**>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine, the  <**name**>Leif Ericson</**name**>  </**desc**>  <**bibl**>   <**author**>Robert Shea</**author**>   <**author**>Robert Anton Wilson</**author**>   <**title**>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</**title**>  </**bibl**> </**org**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>     <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>     <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>     <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.personLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element org {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\*  | (  [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.nameLike](#TEI.model.nameLike) | [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [model.orgPart](#TEI.model.orgPart) | [model.milestoneLike](#TEI.model.milestoneLike) )\*  ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) )\*,  [model.personLike](#TEI.model.personLike)\*  ) } |

## <orgName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp respStmt street title  **corpus:** locale setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <**orgName** **key**="PAS1" **type**="voluntary">  <**placeName** **key**="PEN">Pennsyla.</**placeName**> Abolition Society </**orgName**> [...] |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element orgName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <p>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1. Paragraphs](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note  **corpus:** particDesc setting settingDesc  **header:** application availability change correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc hyphenation langUsage licence normalization projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation samplingDecl segmentation sourceDesc  **namesdates:** event langKnowledge listRelation org person personGrp place population state trait  **textstructure:** back body div front |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**p**>Hallgerd was outside. <**q**>There is blood on your axe,</**q**> she said. <**q**>What have you    done?</**q**> </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</**q**> replied Thjostolf. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</**q**> she said. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Yes,</**q**> said Thjostolf. <**q**>And now you must think up some plan for me.</**q**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not contain other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element p { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent) } |

## <particDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[15.2. Contextual Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org person personGrp |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them. |
| **Example** | <**particDesc**>  <**listPerson**>   <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="2" **xml:id**="P-1234">    <**p**>Female informant, well-educated, born in        Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently.        Socio-Economic status B2.</**p**>   </**person**>   <**person** **sex**="1" **xml:id**="P-4332">    <**persName**>     <**surname**>Hancock</**surname**>     <**forename**>Antony</**forename**>     <**forename**>Aloysius</**forename**>     <**forename**>St John</**forename**>    </**persName**>    <**residence** **notAfter**="1959">     <**address**>      <**street**>Railway Cuttings</**street**>      <**settlement**>East Cheam</**settlement**>     </**address**>    </**residence**>    <**occupation**>comedian</**occupation**>   </**person**>   <**listRelation**>    <**relation** **mutual**="#P-1234 #P-4332"     **name**="spouse" **type**="personal"/>   </**listRelation**>  </**listPerson**> </**particDesc**>  This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates. |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.personLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPerson"/>    <elementRef key="listOrg"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element particDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personLike](#TEI.model.personLike) | [listPerson](#TEI.listPerson) | [listOrg](#TEI.listOrg) )+ ) } |

## <pc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pc>** (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **force** | indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator  **weak** the punctuation mark is not a word separator  **inter** the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator | | | **unit** | provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **pre** | indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head item label name note p pubPlace publisher ref street title  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c |
| **Example** | <**phr**>  <**w**>do</**w**>  <**w**>you</**w**>  <**w**>understand</**w**>  <**pc** **type**="interrogative">?</**pc**> </**phr**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,  attribute unit { text }?,  attribute pre { text }?,  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [c](#TEI.c) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) )\* } |

## <persName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp respStmt street title  **corpus:** locale setting  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Edward</**forename**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname** **type**="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</**surname**>, <**roleName**>Baron Lytton of  <**placeName**>Knebworth</**placeName**>  </**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <person>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<person>** provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.linking (synch, copyOf, next, prev, @corresp, @sameAs)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Legal values are:** | **president** president, vice-president: chairman of a meeting | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** particDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct gap listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus state trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class. |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="adult" **sex**="F">  <**p**>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic    status B2.</**p**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="immortal" **role**="god"  **sex**="intersex">  <**persName**>Hermaphroditos</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="grc">Ἑρμαφρόδιτος</**persName**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **role**="poet" **sex**="1" **xml:id**="Ovi01">  <**persName** **xml:lang**="en">Ovid</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</**persName**>  <**birth** **when**="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Sulmona</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="IT">Italy</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**birth**>  <**death** **notAfter**="0018" **notBefore**="0017">17 or 18 AD <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Tomis (Constanta)</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="RO">Romania</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**death**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element person {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.att.global.linking),  [att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs](#TEI.att.global.linking),  attribute role { "president" }?,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personPart](#TEI.model.personPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ) } |

## <personGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<personGrp>** (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as movement, employers, relatives, or servants, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the participant group.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.sex](#teidata.sex) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* <http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* <http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. For a mixed group, a value such as "mixed" may also be supplied. | | | **age** | specifies the age group of the participants.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **size** | describes informally the size or approximate size of the group for example by means of a number and an indication of accuracy e.g. approx 200.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.word](#teidata.word) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** particDesc  **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct gap listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus state trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination.The global *@xml:id* attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the *@who* attribute is specified on individual utterances. |
| **Example** | <**personGrp** **role**="audience" **sex**="mixed"  **size**="approx 50" **xml:id**="pg1"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element personGrp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute role { text }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  attribute size { list { + } }?,  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [model.personPart](#TEI.model.personPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* ) } |

## <place>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<place>** contains data about a geographic location [[13.3.4. Places](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.placeLike |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** settingDesc  **namesdates:** listPlace org place |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull idno  **namesdates:** bloc country district event listEvent listPlace location place placeName population region settlement state trait |
| **Example** | <**place**>  <**country**>Lithuania</**country**>  <**country** **xml:lang**="lt">Lietuva</**country**>  <**place**>   <**settlement**>Vilnius</**settlement**>  </**place**>  <**place**>   <**settlement**>Kaunas</**settlement**>  </**place**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>     <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="idno"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element place {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\*  | ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.placeStateLike](#TEI.model.placeStateLike) | [model.eventLike](#TEI.model.eventLike) )\*  ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [linkGrp](#TEI.linkGrp) | [link](#TEI.link) )\*,  ( [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [listPlace](#TEI.listPlace) )\*  ) } |

## <placeName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<placeName>** contains an absolute or relative place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement**>Rochester</**settlement**>  <**region**>New York</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**geogName**>Arrochar Alps</**geogName**>  <**region**>Argylshire</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**measure**>10 miles</**measure**>  <**offset**>Northeast of</**offset**>  <**settlement**>Attica</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element placeName {  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <population>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<population>** contains information about the population of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull  **namesdates:** population |
| **Example** | <**population** **resp**="#UKCensus" **when**="2001-04">  <**population** **type**="white">   <**desc**>54153898</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="asian">   <**desc**>11811423</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="black">   <**desc**>1148738</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="mixed">   <**desc**>677117</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="chinese">   <**desc**>247403</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="other">   <**desc**>230615</**desc**>  </**population**> </**population**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <classRef key="model.labelLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="population"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element population {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  (  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )?,  [population](#TEI.population)\*  ) } |

## <postBox>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postBox>** (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used. |
| **Example** | <**postBox**>P.O. Box 280</**postBox**> |
| **Example** | <**postBox**>Postbus 532</**postBox**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postBox { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), text } |

## <postCode>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<postCode>** (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used. |
| **Example** | <**postCode**>HR1 3LR</**postCode**> |
| **Example** | <**postCode**>60142-7</**postCode**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element postCode { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), text } |

## <principal>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**principal** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</**principal**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element principal {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <profileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [[2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **corpus:** particDesc settingDesc  **header:** langUsage textClass |
| **Note** | Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first. |
| **Example** | <**profileDesc**>  <**langUsage**>   <**language** **ident**="fr">French</**language**>  </**langUsage**>  <**textDesc** **n**="novel">   <**channel** **mode**="w">print; part issues</**channel**>   <**constitution** **type**="single"/>   <**derivation** **type**="original"/>   <**domain** **type**="art"/>   <**factuality** **type**="fiction"/>   <**interaction** **type**="none"/>   <**preparedness** **type**="prepared"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="high" **type**="entertain"/>   <**purpose** **degree**="medium" **type**="inform"/>  </**textDesc**>  <**settingDesc**>   <**setting**>    <**name**>Paris, France</**name**>    <**time**>Late 19th century</**time**>   </**setting**>  </**settingDesc**> </**profileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element profileDesc { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [model.profileDescPart](#TEI.model.profileDescPart)\* } |

## <projectDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [[2.3.1. The Project Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD51) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**projectDesc**>  <**p**>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</**p**> </**projectDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element projectDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

## <pubPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Oxford University Press</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>1989</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pubPlace {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <publicationStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p pubPlace publisher  **header:** authority availability distributor idno |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>C. Muquardt </**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</**pubPlace**>  <**date** **when**="1846"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Chadwyck Healey</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Cambridge</**pubPlace**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Available under licence only</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**date** **when**="1992">1992</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publicationStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  ( [model.publicationStmtPart.agency](#TEI.model.publicationStmtPart.agency), [model.publicationStmtPart.detail](#TEI.model.publicationStmtPart.detail)\* )+  | [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  ) } |

## <publisher>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [[3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOI) [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl imprint  **header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page |
| **Example** | <**imprint**>  <**pubPlace**>Oxford</**pubPlace**>  <**publisher**>Clarendon Press</**publisher**>  <**date**>1987</**date**> </**imprint**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publisher { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <punctuation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<punctuation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to punctuation marks in the original. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [3.2. Treatment of Punctuation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPU)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declarable (@default) att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **marks** | indicates whether or not punctation marks have been retained as content within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **none** no punctuation marks have been retained  **some** some punctuation marks have been retained  **all** all punctuation marks have been retained | | | **placement** | indicates whether punctation marks have been captured inside or outside of an adjacent element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **internal** punctuation marks are captured inside adjacent elements  **external** punctuation marks are captured outside adjacent elements | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**punctuation** **marks**="all"  **placement**="internal">  <**p**>All punctuation marks in the source text have been retained and represented using the    appropriate Unicode code point. In cases where a punctuation mark and nearby markup convey    the same information (for example, a sentence ends with a question mark and is also tagged    as <**gi**>s</**gi**>) the punctuation mark is captured as content within the element.  </**p**> </**punctuation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element punctuation {  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,  attribute placement { "internal" | "external" }?,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\* } |

## <quotation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<quotation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **marks** | (quotation marks) indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **none** no quotation marks have been retained  **some** some quotation marks have been retained  **all** all quotation marks have been retained | | |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**quotation** **marks**="none">  <**p**>No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the <**att**>rend</**att**> attribute on the  <**gi**>q</**gi**> element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according    to the following list: <**list** **type**="gloss">    <**label**>dq</**label**>    <**item**>double quotes, open and close</**item**>    <**label**>sq</**label**>    <**item**>single quotes, open and close</**item**>    <**label**>dash</**label**>    <**item**>long dash open, no close</**item**>    <**label**>dg</**label**>    <**item**>double guillemets, open and close</**item**>   </**list**>  </**p**> </**quotation**> |
| **Example** | <**quotation** **marks**="all">  <**p**>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by appropriate Unicode    characters.</**p**> </**quotation**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(@marks) and not (tei:p)">On <s:name/>, either the @marks attribute should be used, or a paragraph of description provided</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element quotation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)\* } |

## <ref>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [16.1. Links](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.pointing (@target) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting monogr name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** application authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The *@target* and *@cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | See especially <**ref** **target**="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second  sentence</**ref**> |
| **Example** | See also <**ref** **target**="#locution">s.v. <**term**>locution</**term**> </**ref**>. |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ref {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.att.pointing),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

## <region>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<region>** contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**region** **n**="IL" **type**="state">Illinois</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element region {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <relation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<relation>** (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of places, events, persons, objects or other items. [[13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | | **active** | identifies the ‘active’ participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **mutual** | supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **passive** | identifies the ‘passive’ participants in a non-mutual relationship.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** listBibl  **namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | Only one of the attributes *@active* and *@mutual* may be supplied; the attribute *@passive* may be supplied only if the attribute *@active* is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="#p1" **name**="supervisor"  **passive**="#p2 #p3 #p4" **type**="social"/>  This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **mutual**="#p2 #p3 #p4"  **name**="friends" **type**="personal"/>  This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/place/italy-orvieto"  **name**="P89\_falls\_within"  **passive**="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/country/IT" **type**="CRM"/>  This indicates that there is a relation, defined by CIDOC CRM, between two resources identified by URLs. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="http://www.ancientwisdoms.ac.uk/cts/urn:cts:greekLit:tlg3017.Syno298.sawsGrc01:divedition.divsection1.o14.a107"  **passive**="http://data.perseus.org/citations/urn:cts:greekLit:tlg0031.tlg002.perseus-grc1:9.35"  **ref**="http://purl.org/saws/ontology#isVariantOf" **resp**="http://viaf.org/viaf/44335536/"/>  This example records a relationship, defined by the SAWS ontology, between a passage of text identified by a CTS URN, and a variant passage of text in the Perseus Digital Library, and assigns the identification of the relationship to a particular editor (all using resolvable URIs). |
| **Schematron** | <s:assert test="@ref or @key or @name">One of the attributes 'name', 'ref' or 'key' must be supplied</s:assert> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes @active and @mutual may be supplied</s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive' may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is supplied</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element relation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute name { text }?,  ( attribute active { list { + } }? | attribute mutual { list { + } }? ),  attribute passive { list { + } }?,  [desc](#TEI.desc)? } |

## <residence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<residence>** describes a person's present or past places of residence. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**residence**>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow, Scotland.</**residence**> |
| **Example** | <**residence** **notAfter**="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele land</**residence**> <**residence** **notAfter**="1996" **notBefore**="1903">  <**placeName**>   <**settlement**>Glasgow</**settlement**>   <**region**>Scotland</**region**>  </**placeName**> </**residence**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element residence {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <resp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* or *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using *@ref*) or indirectly (using *@key*) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage. |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp** **ref**="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</**resp**>  <**name**>Edward Child</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element resp {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <respStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.2. The Edition Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD22) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** analytic bibl imprint monogr series  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** name resp  **namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>transcribed from original ms</**resp**>  <**persName**>Claus Huitfeldt</**persName**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**respStmt**>  <**resp**>converted to XML encoding</**resp**>  <**name**>Alan Morrison</**name**> </**respStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="resp"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </sequence>   <sequence>    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="resp"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element respStmt {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  ( ( [resp](#TEI.resp)+, [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent)+ ) | ( [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent)+, [resp](#TEI.resp)+ ) ) } |

## <revisionDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [[2.6. The Revision Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD6) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list  **header:** change listChange |
| **Note** | If present on this element, the *@status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list. |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="embargoed">  <**change** **when**="1991-11-11" **who**="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </**change**> </**revisionDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <elementRef key="list"/>   <elementRef key="listChange"/>   <elementRef key="change"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element revisionDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  ( [list](#TEI.list) | [listChange](#TEI.listChange) | [change](#TEI.change)+ ) } |

## <roleName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<roleName>** contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder. |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>William</**forename**>  <**surname**>Poulteny</**surname**>  <**roleName**>Earl of Bath</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element roleName {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <s>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<s>** (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC) [8.4.1. Segmentation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSASE)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head item label name note p pubPlace publisher ref street title  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead.The *@type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology. |
| **Example** | <**head**>  <**s**>A short affair</**s**> </**head**> <**s**>When are you leaving?</**s**> <**s**>Tomorrow.</**s**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element s {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <samplingDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [[2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD52) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Note** | This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest. |
| **Example** | <**samplingDecl**>  <**p**>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each    text identified as relevant by respondents.</**p**> </**samplingDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element samplingDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

## <segmentation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<segmentation>** describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc. [[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD53) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.editorialDeclPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** editorialDecl |
| **May contain** | **core:** p |
| **Example** | <**segmentation**>  <**p**>   <**gi**>s</**gi**> elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered sequentially within    their parent <**gi**>div</**gi**> element </**p**> </**segmentation**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**gi**>seg</**gi**> elements are used to mark functional constituents of various types within each <**gi**>s</**gi**>; the typology used is defined by a <**gi**>taxonomy</**gi**> element in the corpus  header <**gi**>classDecl</**gi**> </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.pLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element segmentation {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ } |

## <series>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<series>** (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [[3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl biblStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** biblScope editor gap note ref respStmt title  **header:** availability idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**series** **xml:lang**="de">  <**title** **level**="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>Herausgegeben von</**resp**>   <**name** **type**="person">Manfred Thaller</**name**>   <**name** **type**="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</**name**>  </**respStmt**>  <**title** **level**="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</**title**>  <**biblScope**>Band 11</**biblScope**> </**series**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="title"/>   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>   <elementRef key="editor"/>   <elementRef key="respStmt"/>   <elementRef key="biblScope"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>   <elementRef key="textLang"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="availability"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element series {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [title](#TEI.title) | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) | [editor](#TEI.editor) | [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt) | [biblScope](#TEI.biblScope) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [textLang](#TEI.textLang) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [availability](#TEI.availability) )\* } |

## <setting>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<setting>** describes one particular setting in which a language interaction takes place. [[15.2.3. The Setting Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHSE)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.ascribed (@who) |
| **Contained by** | **corpus:** settingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** date name p  **corpus:** locale  **namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Note** | If the *@who* attribute is not supplied, the setting is assumed to be that of all participants in the language interaction. |
| **Example** | <**setting**>  <**name**>New York City, US</**name**>  <**date**>1989</**date**>  <**locale**>on a park bench</**locale**>  <**activity**>feeding birds</**activity**> </**setting**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"/>    <classRef key="model.dateLike"/>    <classRef key="model.settingPart"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element setting {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  | ( [model.nameLike.agent](#TEI.model.nameLike.agent) | [model.dateLike](#TEI.model.dateLike) | [model.settingPart](#TEI.model.settingPart) )\*  ) } |

## <settingDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [[15.2. Contextual Information](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH) [2.4. The Profile Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4)] | |
| **Module** | corpus |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **corpus:** setting  **namesdates:** listPlace place |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> should be preferred. |
| **Example** | <**settingDesc**>  <**p**>Texts recorded in the    Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988 </**p**> </**settingDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="setting"/>    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element settingDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+ | ( [setting](#TEI.setting) | [model.placeLike](#TEI.model.placeLike) | [listPlace](#TEI.listPlace) )+ ) } |

## <settlement>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settlement>** contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement** **type**="town">Glasgow</**settlement**>  <**region**>Scotland</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element settlement {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <sex>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sex>** specifies the sex of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **value** | supplies a coded value for sex   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.sex](#teidata.sex) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* <http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* <http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety to one or more external standards for purposes of interoperability, or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text. |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="M">male</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="2">female</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="I">Intersex</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="TG F">Female (TransWoman)</**sex**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sex {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  attribute value { list { + } }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <socecStatus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<socecStatus>** (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **scheme** | identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by pointing to a locally-defined <taxonomy> element or by supplying a URI for an externally-defined system.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **code** | identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | <**socecStatus** **code**="#ab1" **scheme**="#rg"/> |
| **Example** | <**socecStatus**>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</**socecStatus**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element socecStatus {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  attribute scheme { text }?,  attribute code { text }?,  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <sourceDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct list listBibl p  **header:** biblFull  **namesdates:** listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In  <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>.  <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>   <**date**>1968</**date**>. </**bibl**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**p**>Born digital: no previous source exists.</**p**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sourceDesc {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  (  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+  | ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) | [model.sourceDescPart](#TEI.model.sourceDescPart) | [model.listLike](#TEI.model.listLike) )+  ) } |

## <sponsor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl monogr  **header:** editionStmt titleStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility. |
| **Example** | <**sponsor**>Association for Computers and the Humanities</**sponsor**> <**sponsor**>Association for Computational Linguistics</**sponsor**> <**sponsor** **ref**="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</**sponsor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sponsor {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.att.canonical),  [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <state>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<state>** contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization often at some specific time or for a specific date range. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (@type) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull  **namesdates:** state |
| **Note** | Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder. |
| **Example** | <**state** **ref**="#SCHOL" **type**="status">  <**label**>scholar</**label**> </**state**> |
| **Example** | <**org**>  <**orgName** **notAfter**="1960">The Silver Beetles</**orgName**>  <**orgName** **notBefore**="1960">The Beatles</**orgName**>  <**state** **from**="1960-08" **to**="1962-05"   **type**="membership">   <**desc**>    <**persName**>John Lennon</**persName**>    <**persName**>Paul McCartney</**persName**>    <**persName**>George Harrison</**persName**>    <**persName**>Stuart Sutcliffe</**persName**>    <**persName**>Pete Best</**persName**>   </**desc**>  </**state**>  <**state** **notBefore**="1963" **type**="membership">   <**desc**>    <**persName**>John Lennon</**persName**>    <**persName**>Paul McCartney</**persName**>    <**persName**>George Harrison</**persName**>    <**persName**>Ringo Starr</**persName**>   </**desc**>  </**state**> </**org**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="state"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.headLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element state {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  (  [state](#TEI.state)+  | (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+,  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  | ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  ) } |

## <street>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<street>** contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned. |
| **Example** | <**street**>via della Faggiola, 36</**street**> |
| **Example** | <**street**>  <**name**>Duntaggin</**name**>, 110 Southmoor Road </**street**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element street { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq) } |

## <surname>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surname>** contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.personal (@full) (att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**surname** **type**="combine">St John Stevas</**surname**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surname {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.personal.attributes](#TEI.att.personal),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <tagUsage>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<tagUsage>** documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **gi** | (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent <namespace> element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [teidata.name](#teidata.name) | | | **occurs** | specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | | **withId** | (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global *@xml:id* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.count](#teidata.count) | | | **render** | specifies the identifier of a <rendition> element which defines how this element was rendered in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml) | will be removed on 2017-01-01 | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The recommended way of specifying a default rendition for a set of elements is to use the *@selector* attribute on the <rendition> element. | | |
| **Contained by** | **header:** namespace |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email label list listBibl name ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="it">Render using a slant or italic variant on the current font</**rendition**> <!-- ... -->  <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="28" **render**="#it"    **withId**="2"> Used to mark English words      italicized in the copy text.</**tagUsage**>   <**tagUsage** **gi**="foreign" **render**="#it">Used to mark non-English words in the copy text.</**tagUsage**> <!-- ... -->  </**namespace**> </**tagsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element tagUsage {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute gi { text },  attribute occurs { text }?,  attribute withId { text }?,  attribute render { list { + } }?,  [macro.limitedContent](#TEI.macro.limitedContent)} |

## <tagsDecl>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<tagsDecl>** (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [[2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57) [2.3. The Encoding Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD5)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **partial** | indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Note** | TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true. | | |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** namespace |
| **Example** | <**tagsDecl**>  <**rendition** **xml:id**="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</**rendition**>  <**namespace** **name**="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="hi" **occurs**="467"    **render**="#rend-it"/>   <**tagUsage** **gi**="title" **occurs**="45"    **render**="#rend-it"/>  </**namespace**>  <**namespace** **name**="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">   <**tagUsage** **gi**="para" **occurs**="10"/>  </**namespace**> </**tagsDecl**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="rendition"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="namespace"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element tagsDecl {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute partial { text }?,  ( [rendition](#TEI.rendition)\*, [namespace](#TEI.namespace)\* ) } |

## <taxonomy>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<taxonomy>** defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [[2.3.7. The Classification Declaration](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD55)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** classDecl taxonomy |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc listBibl  **header:** biblFull category taxonomy |
| **Note** | Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested. |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy** **xml:id**="tax.b">  <**bibl**>Brown Corpus</**bibl**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a">   <**catDesc**>Press Reportage</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a1">    <**catDesc**>Daily</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a2">    <**catDesc**>Sunday</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a3">    <**catDesc**>National</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a4">    <**catDesc**>Provincial</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a5">    <**catDesc**>Political</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.a6">    <**catDesc**>Sports</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d">   <**catDesc**>Religion</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d1">    <**catDesc**>Books</**catDesc**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="tax.b.d2">    <**catDesc**>Periodicals and tracts</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="literature">   <**catDesc**>Literature</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="poetry">    <**catDesc**>Poetry</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="sonnet">     <**catDesc**>Sonnet</**catDesc**>     <**category** **xml:id**="shakesSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Shakespearean Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>     <**category** **xml:id**="petraSonnet">      <**catDesc**>Petrarchan Sonnet</**catDesc**>     </**category**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="haiku">     <**catDesc**>Haiku</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="drama">    <**catDesc**>Drama</**catDesc**>   </**category**>  </**category**>  <**category** **xml:id**="meter">   <**catDesc**>Metrical Categories</**catDesc**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feet">    <**catDesc**>Metrical Feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="iambic">     <**catDesc**>Iambic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="trochaic">     <**catDesc**>trochaic</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>   <**category** **xml:id**="feetNumber">    <**catDesc**>Number of feet</**catDesc**>    <**category** **xml:id**="pentameter">     <**catDesc**>>Pentameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>    <**category** **xml:id**="tetrameter">     <**catDesc**>>Tetrameter</**catDesc**>    </**category**>   </**category**>  </**category**> </**taxonomy**> <!-- elsewhere in document --> <**lg** **ana**="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">  <**l**>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="category"/>    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>   </alternate>   <sequence>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="category"/>     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element taxonomy {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  (  ( [model.glossLike](#TEI.model.glossLike) | [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike) )\*  | ( [category](#TEI.category) | [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy) )+  | ( [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike), ( [category](#TEI.category) | [taxonomy](#TEI.taxonomy) )\* )  ) } |

## <teiCorpus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | The version of the TEI scheme   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.version](#teidata.version) | | **Default** | 5.0 | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus |
| **May contain** | **core:** teiCorpus  **header:** teiHeader  **textstructure:** TEI text |
| **Note** | Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.This element is mandatory when applicable. |
| **Example** | <**teiCorpus** **version**="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for corpus -->  </**teiHeader**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for first text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of first text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**>  <**TEI**>   <**teiHeader**> <!-- header for second text -->   </**teiHeader**>   <**text**> <!-- content of second text -->   </**text**>  </**TEI**> <!-- more TEI elements here --> </**teiCorpus**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.resourceLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <elementRef key="TEI"/>      <elementRef key="teiCorpus"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="TEI"/>     <elementRef key="teiCorpus"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiCorpus {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute version { text }?,  (  [teiHeader](#TEI.teiHeader),  ( ( [model.resourceLike](#TEI.model.resourceLike)+, ( [TEI](#TEI.TEI) | [teiCorpus](#TEI.teiCorpus) )\* ) | ( [TEI](#TEI.TEI) | [teiCorpus](#TEI.teiCorpus) )+ )  ) } |

## <teiHeader>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | [Deprecated](http://www.tei-c.org/Activities/Council/Working/tcw27.xml) | will be removed on 2016-11-18 | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Sample values include:** | **text** the header is attached to a single text. [Default]  **corpus** the header is attached to a corpus. | | |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |
| **Example** | <**teiHeader**>  <**fileDesc**>   <**titleStmt**>    <**title**>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</**title**>    <**author**>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</**author**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Originally prepared by</**resp**>     <**name**>Trevor Howard-Hill</**name**>    </**respStmt**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Revised and edited by</**resp**>     <**name**>Christine Avern-Carr</**name**>    </**respStmt**>   </**titleStmt**>   <**publicationStmt**>    <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**>    <**address**>     <**addrLine**>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</**addrLine**>    </**address**>    <**idno** **type**="OTA">119</**idno**>    <**availability**>     <**p**>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</**p**>    </**availability**>    <**date** **when**="1968">1968</**date**>   </**publicationStmt**>   <**sourceDesc**>    <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,        1968)</**bibl**>   </**sourceDesc**>  </**fileDesc**>  <**encodingDesc**>   <**projectDesc**>    <**p**>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling        concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</**p**>   </**projectDesc**>   <**editorialDecl**>    <**correction**>     <**p**>Turned letters are silently corrected.</**p**>    </**correction**>    <**normalization**>     <**p**>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured          forms are not encoded.</**p**>    </**normalization**>   </**editorialDecl**>   <**refsDecl** **xml:id**="ASLREF">    <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.\*)"     **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">     <**p**>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that          listed here: <**list**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the preceding <**gi**>lb</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a period</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the ancestor <**gi**>div2</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a space</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the parent <**gi**>div1</**gi**>       </**item**>      </**list**>     </**p**>    </**cRefPattern**>   </**refsDecl**>  </**encodingDesc**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**list**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</**date**> Last checked by CAC</**item**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</**date**> LB made new file</**item**>   </**list**>  </**revisionDesc**> </**teiHeader**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>   <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="revisionDesc"    minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiHeader {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  attribute type { text }?,  ( [fileDesc](#TEI.fileDesc), [model.teiHeaderPart](#TEI.model.teiHeaderPart)\*, [revisionDesc](#TEI.revisionDesc)? ) } |

## <text>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4. Default Text Structure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.resourceLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** teiCorpus  **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** gap note  **linking:** anchor timeline  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing  **textstructure:** back body front |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose. |
| **Example** | <**text**>  <**front**>   <**docTitle**>    <**titlePart**>Autumn Haze</**titlePart**>   </**docTitle**>  </**front**>  <**body**>   <**l**>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</**l**>   <**l**>That settles softly down upon the water?</**l**>  </**body**> </**text**> |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:  <**text**>  <**front**> <!-- front matter for the whole group -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first text -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second text -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="body"/>    <elementRef key="group"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="back"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element text {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [front](#TEI.front), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?,  ( [body](#TEI.body) | [group](#TEI.group) ),  [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\*,  ( [back](#TEI.back), [model.global](#TEI.model.global)\* )?  ) } |

## <textClass>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [[2.4.3. The Text Classification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD43)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Member of** | model.profileDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** profileDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** classCode keywords |
| **Example** | <**taxonomy**>  <**category** **xml:id**="acprose">   <**catDesc**>Academic prose</**catDesc**>  </**category**> <!-- other categories here --> </**taxonomy**> <!-- ... --> <**textClass**>  <**catRef** **target**="#acprose"/>  <**classCode** **scheme**="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</**classCode**>  <**keywords** **scheme**="http://authorities.loc.gov">   <**list**>    <**item**>End of the world</**item**>    <**item**>History - philosophy</**item**>   </**list**>  </**keywords**> </**textClass**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="classCode"/>   <elementRef key="catRef"/>   <elementRef key="keywords"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element textClass {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.att.declarable),  ( [classCode](#TEI.classCode) | [catRef](#TEI.catRef) | [keywords](#TEI.keywords) )\* } |

## <timeline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<timeline>** provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text. [[16.5.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASYMP)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **origin** | designates the origin of the timeline, i.e. the time at which it begins.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | If this attribute is not supplied, the implication is that the time of origin is not known. If it is supplied, it must point either to one of the <when> elements in its content, or to another <timeline> element. | | | **unit** | specifies the unit of time corresponding to the *@interval* value of the timeline or of its constituent points in time.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **d** (days)  **h** (hours)  **min** (minutes)  **s** (seconds)  **ms** (milliseconds) | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **linking:** when |
| **Example** | <**timeline** **unit**="ms" **xml:id**="TL01">  <**when** **absolute**="11:30:00" **xml:id**="TL-w0"/>  <**when** **interval**="unknown" **since**="#TL-w0"   **xml:id**="TL-w1"/>  <**when** **interval**="100" **since**="#TL-w1"   **xml:id**="TL-w2"/>  <**when** **interval**="200" **since**="#TL-w2"   **xml:id**="TL-w3"/>  <**when** **interval**="150" **since**="#TL-w3"   **xml:id**="TL-w4"/>  <**when** **interval**="250" **since**="#TL-w4"   **xml:id**="TL-w5"/>  <**when** **interval**="100" **since**="#TL-w5"   **xml:id**="TL-w6"/> </**timeline**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="when"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element timeline {  attribute origin { text }?,  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" }?,  [when](#TEI.when)+ } |

## <title>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<title>** contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:base, @xml:id, @xml:lang)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Legal values are:** | **topic** title of the topic in thematic table of contents | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting monogr name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage titleStmt  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* and *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |
| **Example** | <**title**>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  18–21 July 1989</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title**>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  edition</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title** **type**="full">  <**title** **type**="main">Synthèse</**title**>  <**title** **type**="sub">an international journal for    epistemology, methodology and history of    science</**title**> </**title**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element title {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.att.global),  attribute type { "topic" }?,  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

## <titleStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2. The File Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** biblFull fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author editor meeting respStmt title  **header:** funder principal sponsor |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>   <**name**>P.J. Lucas</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="title"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.respLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titleStmt { [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global), ( [title](#TEI.title)+, [model.respLike](#TEI.model.respLike)\* ) } |

## <trait>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<trait>** contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder and usually not at some specific time or for a specific date range. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date desc editor email head item label meeting name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority catDesc change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor tagUsage  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname trait  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p  **header:** biblFull  **namesdates:** trait |
| **Note** | Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder. |
| **Example** | <**trait** **type**="physical">  <**label**>Eye colour</**label**>  <**desc**>Blue</**desc**> </**trait**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="trait"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.headLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element trait {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.datable.attributes](#TEI.att.datable),  [att.naming.attributes](#TEI.att.naming),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  (  [trait](#TEI.trait)+  | (  [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)\*,  [model.pLike](#TEI.model.pLike)+,  ( [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  | ( [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) | [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) )\*  )  ) } |

## <u>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<u>** (utterance) contains a stretch of speech usually preceded and followed by silence or by a change of speaker. [[8.3.1. Utterances](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAUT)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.analytic (@ana) |
| **Member of** | model.divPart.spoken |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note  **header:** change licence  **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address date email gap name note ref title  **header:** idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | Prose and a mixture of speech elementsAlthough individual transcriptions may consistently use <u> elements for turns or other units, and although in most cases a <u> will be delimited by pause or change of speaker, <u> is not required to represent a turn or any communicative event, nor to be bounded by pauses or change of speaker. At a minimum, a <u> is some phonetic production by a given speaker. |
| **Example** | <**u** **who**="#spkr1">if did you set</**u**> <**u** **trans**="latching" **who**="#spkr2">well Joe and I set it between us</**u**> <**list** **type**="speakers">  <**item** **xml:id**="spkr1"/>  <**item** **xml:id**="spkr2"/> </**list**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element u {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* } |

## <vocal>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<vocal>** marks any vocalized but not necessarily lexical phenomenon, for example voiced pauses, non-lexical backchannels, etc. [[8.3.3. Vocal, Kinesic, Incident](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAVO)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.typed (@type) att.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.analytic (@ana) |
| **Member of** | model.global.spoken |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Example** | <**vocal** **dur**="PT12S">  <**desc**>whistles</**desc**> </**vocal**> <**vocal** **iterated**="true">  <**desc**>whistles intermittently</**desc**> </**vocal**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.descLike"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element vocal {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [model.descLike](#TEI.model.descLike)\* } |

## <w>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<w>** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [[17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.responsibility (@resp)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **lemma** | provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | | **lemmaRef** | provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |
| **Member of** | model.segLike |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head item label name note p pubPlace publisher ref street title  **header:** change distributor edition extent geoDecl licence  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc w  **core:** gap note  **linking:** anchor timeline  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Example** | <**w** **lemma**="hit"  **lemmaRef**="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml" **type**="verb">hitt<**m** **type**="suffix">ing</**m**> </**w**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <elementRef key="seg"/>   <elementRef key="w"/>   <elementRef key="m"/>   <elementRef key="c"/>   <elementRef key="pc"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <classRef key="model.lPart"/>   <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>   <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element w {  [att.global.attributes](#TEI.att.global),  [att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.att.segLike),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  attribute lemma { text }?,  attribute lemmaRef { text }?,  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [seg](#TEI.seg) | [w](#TEI.w) | [m](#TEI.m) | [c](#TEI.c) | [pc](#TEI.pc) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) | [model.hiLike](#TEI.model.hiLike) | [model.pPart.edit](#TEI.model.pPart.edit) )\* } |

## <when>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<when>** indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely. [[16.5.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASYMP)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.linking (corresp, sameAs, copyOf, next, prev, @synch)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **absolute** | supplies an absolute value for the time.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | **Note** | This attribute should always be specified on a <when> element which serves as the target for the *@origin* attribute of a <timeLine>. | | | **interval** | specifies a time interval either as a number or as one of the keywords defined by the datatype data.interval   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.interval](#teidata.interval) | | | **since** | identifies the reference point for determining the time of the current <when> element, which is obtained by adding the interval to the time of the reference point.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | This attribute should point to another <when> element in the same <timeline>. If no value is supplied, and the *@absolute* attribute is also unspecified, then the reference point is understood to be the origin of the enclosing <timeline> tag. | | |
| **Contained by** | **linking:** timeline |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**when** **interval**="20" **since**="#w2" **xml:id**="TW3"/> |
| **Content model** | <content/> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element when {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.linking.attribute.synch](#TEI.att.global.linking),  attribute absolute { text }?,  attribute interval { text }?,  attribute since { text }?,  empty } |

## <writing>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<writing>** contains a passage of written text revealed to participants in the course of a spoken text. [[8.3.4. Writing](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAWR)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.typed (@type) att.global (xml:lang, xml:base, @xml:id) att.global.analytic (@ana) |
| **Member of** | model.global.spoken |
| **Contained by** | **analysis:** s w  **core:** addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange date editor email head imprint item label list name note p pubPlace publisher ref resp series street title  **corpus:** locale  **header:** authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl language licence principal sponsor  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person personGrp placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **spoken:** u writing  **textstructure:** back body div front text |
| **May contain** | **analysis:** c pc s w  **core:** address bibl biblStruct date desc email gap label list listBibl name note ref title  **header:** biblFull idno  **linking:** anchor timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc country district forename genName geo listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink orgName persName placeName population region roleName settlement state surname trait  **spoken:** incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | The <writing> element will usually be short and most simply transcribed as a character string; the content model also allows a sequence of paragraphs and paragraph-level elements, in case the writing has enough internal structure to warrant such markup. In either case the usual phrase-level tags for written text are available. |
| **Example** | <!-- ... --><**l**>man in a coonskin cap</**l**> <**writing**>coonskin</**writing**> <**l**>in a pig pen</**l**> <**writing**>pig pen</**writing**> <**l**>wants eleven dollar bills</**l**> <**writing**>20 dollar bills</**writing**> <**l**>you only got ten</**l**> <**writing**>10</**writing**> <!-- ... --> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element writing {  [att.global.attribute.xmlid](#TEI.att.global),  [att.global.analytic.attribute.ana](#TEI.att.global.analytic),  [att.ascribed.attributes](#TEI.att.ascribed),  [att.typed.attributes](#TEI.att.typed),  [macro.paraContent](#TEI.macro.paraContent)} |

# Model classes

## model.addrPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addrPart**   groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [[3.5.2. Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAD)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district placeName region settlement] location population state trait] idno] addrLine postBox postCode street |

## model.addressLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addressLike**   groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#ST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address affiliation email |

## model.applicationLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.applicationLike**   groups elements used to record application-specific information about a document in its header. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | appInfo |
| **Members** | application |

## model.availabilityPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.availabilityPart**   groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability |
| **Members** | licence |

## model.biblLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblLike**   groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | event listBibl location model.inter model.personPart org place population sourceDesc state taxonomy trait |
| **Members** | bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl |

## model.biblPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.biblPart**   groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl |
| **Members** | model.imprintPart [biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl citedRange edition extent listRelation series |

## model.common

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.common**   groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div |
| **Members** | model.divPart [model.divPart.spoken [u] [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) model.pLike [p] ] model.inter [model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [[model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike)] [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike)] |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

## model.dateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.dateLike**   groups elements containing temporal expressions. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | imprint model.pPart.data setting |
| **Members** | date |

## model.descLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.descLike**   groups elements which contain a description of their function. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | category gap incident kinesic taxonomy vocal |
| **Members** | desc |

## model.divBottom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottom**   groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div front list |
| **Members** | [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) model.divWrapper [meeting] |

## model.divGenLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divGenLike**   groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div |
| **Members** | divGen |

## model.divLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divLike**   groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back body div front |
| **Members** | div |

## model.divPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart**   groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.divPart.spoken [u] [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) model.pLike [p] |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

## model.divPart.spoken

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart.spoken**   groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within spoken texts. [[8.1. General Considerations and Overview](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSOV)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Used by** | model.divPart |
| **Members** | u |
| **Note** | Spoken texts may be structured in many ways; elements in this class are typically larger units such as turns or utterances. |

## model.divTop

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTop**   groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] ] model.divWrapper [meeting] |

## model.divTopPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTopPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop |
| **Members** | model.headLike [head] |

## model.divWrapper

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divWrapper**   groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divBottom model.divTop |
| **Members** | meeting |

## model.editorialDeclPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.editorialDeclPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editorialDecl |
| **Members** | correction hyphenation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation |

## model.emphLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.emphLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | title |

## model.encodingDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.encodingDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | encodingDesc |
| **Members** | appInfo classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl projectDesc samplingDecl tagsDecl |

## model.eventLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.eventLike**   groups elements which describe events. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.orgPart model.personPart place |
| **Members** | event listEvent |

## model.frontPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.frontPart**   groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [[7.1. Front and Back Matter](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRFAB) ] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | [model.frontPart.drama](#TEI.model.frontPart.drama) divGen |

## model.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global**   groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address back bibl body date div front head imprint list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara person personGrp series text u w |
| **Members** | model.global.edit [gap] model.global.meta [timeline] model.global.spoken [incident kinesic vocal writing] model.milestoneLike [anchor] model.noteLike [note] |

## model.global.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.edit**   groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | gap |

## model.global.meta

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.meta**   groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | timeline |
| **Note** | Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text. |

## model.global.spoken

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.spoken**   groups elements which may appear globally within spoken texts. [[8.1. General Considerations and Overview](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSOV)] | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | incident kinesic vocal writing |
| **Note** | This class groups elements which can appear anywhere within transcribed speech. |

## model.headLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.headLike**   groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | divGen event listBibl listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation model.divTopPart org place population state trait |
| **Members** | head |

## model.highlighted

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.highlighted**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [title] [model.hiLike](#TEI.model.hiLike) |

## model.imprintPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.imprintPart**   groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [[3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | imprint model.biblPart |
| **Members** | biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher |

## model.inter

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.inter**   groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) model.qLike [[model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike)] [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) |

## model.labelLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.labelLike**   groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | application event location model.inter org place population state trait |
| **Members** | desc label |

## model.limitedPhrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.limitedPhrase**   groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | catDesc macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [title] [model.hiLike](#TEI.model.hiLike) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address affiliation email] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike [geo] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district placeName region settlement] location population state trait] idno] ] [model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) model.ptrLike [ref] |

## model.listLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.listLike**   groups list-like elements. [[3.7. Lists](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back model.inter sourceDesc |
| **Members** | list listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace |

## model.measureLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.measureLike**   groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [[3.5.3. Numbers and Measures](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | geo |

## model.milestoneLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.milestoneLike**   groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) [3.10.3. Milestone Elements](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listBibl model.global org |
| **Members** | anchor |

## model.nameLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike**   groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.pPart.data org |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district placeName region settlement] location population state trait] idno |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

## model.nameLike.agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike.agent**   groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt setting |
| **Members** | name orgName persName |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

## model.noteLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.noteLike**   groups globally-available note-like elements. [[3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | biblStruct event location model.global monogr notesStmt org place population state trait |
| **Members** | note |

## model.orgPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.orgPart**   groups elements which form part of the description of an organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | org |
| **Members** | model.eventLike [event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace |

## model.pLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike**   groups paragraph-like elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | application availability back correction editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc event front hyphenation langKnowledge langUsage listRelation model.divPart normalization org particDesc person personGrp place population projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation samplingDecl segmentation setting settingDesc sourceDesc state trait |
| **Members** | p |

## model.pLike.front

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike.front**   groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [[4.6. Title Pages](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | back front |
| **Members** | head |

## model.pPart.data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.data**   groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [address affiliation email] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike [geo] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district placeName region settlement] location population state trait] idno] |

## model.pPart.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.edit**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.4. Simple Editorial Changes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase pc w |
| **Members** | [model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.transcriptional](#TEI.model.pPart.transcriptional) |

## model.persNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname |

## model.persStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persStateLike**   groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.personPart |
| **Members** | affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus state trait |
| **Note** | These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others. |

## model.personLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personLike**   groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPerson org particDesc |
| **Members** | org person personGrp |

## model.personPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personPart**   groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | person personGrp |
| **Members** | model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl] model.eventLike [event listEvent] model.persStateLike [affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus state trait] birth death idno |

## model.phrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase**   groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | date head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara u |
| **Members** | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) model.highlighted [model.emphLike [title] [model.hiLike](#TEI.model.hiLike)] [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address affiliation email] model.dateLike [date] model.measureLike [geo] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName] [model.offsetLike](#TEI.model.offsetLike) model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district placeName region settlement] location population state trait] idno] ] model.pPart.edit [[model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.transcriptional](#TEI.model.pPart.transcriptional)] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) model.ptrLike [ref] model.segLike [c pc s w] [model.specDescLike](#TEI.model.specDescLike) |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

## model.placeLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeLike**   groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPlace org place settingDesc |
| **Members** | place |

## model.placeNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.placeStateLike |
| **Members** | bloc country district placeName region settlement |

## model.placeStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeStateLike**   groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike place |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart [bloc country district placeName region settlement] location population state trait |

## model.profileDescPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.profileDescPart**   groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | profileDesc |
| **Members** | langUsage particDesc settingDesc textClass |

## model.ptrLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.ptrLike**   groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [[3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | analytic application bibl biblStruct model.limitedPhrase model.phrase monogr series |
| **Members** | ref |

## model.publicationStmtPart.agency

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**   groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | authority distributor publisher |
| **Note** | The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element.See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail. |

## model.publicationStmtPart.detail

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**   groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | address availability date idno pubPlace |
| **Note** | A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency. |

## model.qLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.qLike**   groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.inter |
| **Members** | [model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike) |

## model.resourceLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.resourceLike**   groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI teiCorpus |
| **Members** | text |

## model.respLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.respLike**   groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt |
| **Members** | author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor |

## model.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.segLike**   groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | c pc s w |
| **Note** | The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header. |

## model.settingPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.settingPart**   groups elements used to describe the setting of a linguistic interaction. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | setting |
| **Members** | locale |

## model.teiHeaderPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.teiHeaderPart**   groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc profileDesc |

# Attribute classes

## att.ascribed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | change incident kinesic setting u vocal writing |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **who** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@who* attribute.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Barnardo">Bernardo</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Francisco">Francisco</**role**>  <**roleDesc**>a soldier</**roleDesc**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **who**="#Barnardo">  <**speaker**>Bernardo</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">Who's there?</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **who**="#Francisco">  <**speaker**>Francisco</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element. | | |

## att.canonical

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.canonical**   provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.naming [att.personal [addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName roleName surname] affiliation author birth bloc country death district editor education event nationality occupation population pubPlace region residence settlement socecStatus state trait] faith funder meeting principal relation resp respStmt sponsor |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.text](#teidata.text) | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="name 427308"   **type**="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</**name**> </**author**> | | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"   **ref**="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</**name**> </**author**> | | | **Note** | The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *@key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *@ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in [RFC 4151](#RFC4151). | | | **ref** | (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | <**name** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"  **type**="person">Seamus Heaney</**name**> | | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. | | |

## att.citing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.citing**   provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | biblScope citedRange |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Suggested values include:** | **volume** the element contains a volume number.  **issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.  **page** the element contains a page number or page range.  **line** the element contains a line number or line range.  **chapter** the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)  **part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.  **column** the element identifies a column. | | | **from** | specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | | **to** | specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *@unit* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.word](#teidata.word) | | |

## att.datable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | affiliation age application birth bloc change country date death district education event faith floruit langKnowledge langKnown licence location name nationality occupation orgName persName placeName population region relation residence resp settlement sex socecStatus state trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) |

## att.datable.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.w3c**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [[3.5.4. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.3.6. Dates and Times](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age application birth bloc change country date death district education event faith floruit langKnowledge langKnown licence location name nationality occupation orgName persName placeName population region relation residence resp settlement sex socecStatus state trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <**p**>  <**date** **when**="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</**date**>  <**date** **when**="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>  <**time** **when**="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</**time**>  <**time** **when**="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</**time**>  <**date** **when**="1962-10">October of 1962</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--06-12">June 12th</**date**>  <**date** **when**="---01">the first of the month</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--08">August</**date**>  <**date** **when**="2006">MMVI</**date**>  <**date** **when**="0056">AD 56</**date**>  <**date** **when**="-0056">56 BC</**date**> </**p**> | | | This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the <**date** **calendar**="#Julian"  **when**="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</**date**>. | | | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**placeName**>Dorchester, Village,</**placeName**>   <**date** **when**="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>To    Mrs. Cornell,</**salute**> Sunday <**time** **when**="12:00:00">noon.</**time**> </**opener**> | | | | **notBefore** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | | **notAfter** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | | **from** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | | **to** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.temporal.w3c](#teidata.temporal.w3c) | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@when]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@from]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@to]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notAfter">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Example** | <**date** **from**="1863-05-28" **to**="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</**date**> |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

## att.datcat

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datcat**   provides the *@dcr:datacat* and *@dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [[9.5.2. Lexical View](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIMVLV) [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.segLike [c pc s w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **valueDatcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *@dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.  <**fs**    xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">  <**f** **dcr:datcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"   **dcr:valueDatcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256" **fVal**="#commonNoun" **name**="POS"/> </**fs**> |
| **Note** | ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *@dcr:datcat* and *@dcr:valueDatcat*. |

## att.declarable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declarable**   provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *@decls* attribute. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | availability bibl biblFull biblStruct correction editorialDecl geoDecl hyphenation langUsage listBibl listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace normalization particDesc projectDesc punctuation quotation samplingDecl segmentation settingDesc sourceDesc textClass |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **default** | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.truthValue](#teidata.truthValue) | | **Legal values are:** | **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected  **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default] | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). Only one element of a particular type may have a *@default* attribute with a value of true. |

## att.duration

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.duration**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events. | |
| **Module** | spoken |
| **Members** | date |
| **Attributes** | Attributes |
| **Note** | This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.duration.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.duration.iso class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes is rarely needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes. |

## att.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global**   provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | TEI addName addrLine address affiliation age analytic appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body c catDesc category change citedRange classCode classDecl correction country date death desc distributor district divGen edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education email encodingDesc event extent faith fileDesc floruit forename front funder genName geo geoDecl hyphenation idno imprint keywords label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language licence listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation locale location meeting monogr name nameLink namespace nationality normalization notesStmt occupation org orgName p particDesc pc persName personGrp place placeName population postBox postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation quotation ref region relation residence resp respStmt revisionDesc roleName s samplingDecl segmentation series setting settingDesc settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc sponsor state street surname tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader text textClass titleStmt trait w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.responsibility (@resp)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [ID](#ID) | | **Note** | The *@xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [3.10. Reference Systems](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS). | | | **xml:lang** | (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.language](#teidata.language) | | <**p**> … The consequences of  this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <**foreign** **xml:lang**="rap">ariki</**foreign**> or chief  (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  ancestral territorial organization.</**p**> | | | **Note** | The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>. The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **xml:base** | provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | <**div** **type**="bibl">  <**head**>Bibliography</**head**>  <**listBibl** **xml:base**="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="LandLVowOf.sgm">     <**title**>The Vow of the Peacock</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Compton, Margaret Clephane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="NortMIrene.sgm">     <**title**>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Taylor, Jane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="TaylJEssay.sgm">     <**title**>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>  </**listBibl**> </**div**> | | | |

## att.global.analytic

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.analytic**   provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [[17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AIATTS) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP)] | |
| **Module** | analysis |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI addName addrLine address affiliation age analytic appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body c catDesc category change citedRange classCode classDecl correction country date death desc distributor district divGen edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education email encodingDesc event extent faith fileDesc floruit forename front funder genName geo geoDecl hyphenation idno imprint keywords label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language licence listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation locale location meeting monogr name nameLink namespace nationality normalization notesStmt occupation org orgName p particDesc pc persName personGrp place placeName population postBox postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation quotation ref region relation residence resp respStmt revisionDesc roleName s samplingDecl segmentation series setting settingDesc settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc sponsor state street surname tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader text textClass titleStmt trait w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **ana** | (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *@ana* attribute appears.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts. | | |

## att.global.linking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.linking**   provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI addName addrLine address affiliation age analytic appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body c catDesc category change citedRange classCode classDecl correction country date death desc distributor district divGen edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education email encodingDesc event extent faith fileDesc floruit forename front funder genName geo geoDecl hyphenation idno imprint keywords label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language licence listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation locale location meeting monogr name nameLink namespace nationality normalization notesStmt occupation org orgName p particDesc pc persName personGrp place placeName population postBox postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation quotation ref region relation residence resp respStmt revisionDesc roleName s samplingDecl segmentation series setting settingDesc settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc sponsor state street surname tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader text textClass titleStmt trait w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **corresp** | (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | <**group**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1"   **xml:lang**="mi">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2"   **xml:lang**="en">   <**body** **corresp**="#t1-g1-t1-body1"    **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**group**>  In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *@corresp*. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *@corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *@corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent. | | | <!-- In a placeography --><**place** **corresp**="#LOND2 #GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND1">  <**placeName**>London</**placeName**>  <**desc**>The city of London...</**desc**> </**place**> <!-- In a literary personography --> <**person** **corresp**="#LOND1 #GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND2">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Allegorical character representing the city of <**ref** **target**="LOND1.xml">London</**ref**>.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**> <**person** **corresp**="#LOND1 #LOND2"  **xml:id**="GENI1">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London’s Genius</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an      allegorical character in mayoral shows.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**>  In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them. | | | | **synch** | (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | | **sameAs** | points to an element that is the same as the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **copyOf** | points to an element of which the current element is a copy.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | **Note** | Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at. | | | **next** | points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | | **prev** | (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) | | |

## att.global.responsibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.responsibility**   provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI addName addrLine address affiliation age analytic appInfo application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body c catDesc category change citedRange classCode classDecl correction country date death desc distributor district divGen edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl education email encodingDesc event extent faith fileDesc floruit forename front funder genName geo geoDecl hyphenation idno imprint keywords label langKnowledge langKnown langUsage language licence listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation locale location meeting monogr name nameLink namespace nationality normalization notesStmt occupation org orgName p particDesc pc persName personGrp place placeName population postBox postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation quotation ref region relation residence resp respStmt revisionDesc roleName s samplingDecl segmentation series setting settingDesc settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc sponsor state street surname tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader text textClass titleStmt trait w] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **resp** | (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Note that a simple *@resp* pointing to a person or organization is likely to be somewhat ambiguous with regard to the nature of the responsibility. For this reason, we recommend that *@resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.). | | |

## att.naming

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.naming**   provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.personal [addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName roleName surname] affiliation author birth bloc country death district editor education event nationality occupation population pubPlace region residence settlement socecStatus state trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) separated by whitespace | | |

## att.personal

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.personal**   common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName roleName surname |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (@role) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **full** | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Legal values are:** | **yes** the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]  **abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.  **init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. | | |

## att.pointing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing**   provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | citedRange licence ref |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#teidata.pointer) separated by whitespace | | **Note** | One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium. | | |

## att.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.segLike**   provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | c pc s w |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **function** | characterizes the function of the segment.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | **Note** | Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization. | | |

## att.typed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.typed**   provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | TEI addName application bibl biblStruct bloc c change country date desc district event forename genName incident kinesic label listBibl listChange listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location name nameLink org orgName pc persName place placeName population ref region relation roleName s settlement state surname text trait vocal w writing |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [teidata.enumerated](#teidata.enumerated) | | <**div** **type**="verse">  <**head**>Night in Tarras</**head**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>At evening tramping on the hot white road</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | The *@type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way. | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |

# Macros

## data.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **data.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Declaration** | data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

## macro.limitedContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | desc meeting tagUsage |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.limitedContent = ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) )\* |

## macro.paraContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | p ref title writing |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.paraContent =  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) )\* |

## macro.phraseSeq

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | addName addrLine affiliation author biblScope birth bloc citedRange country death distributor district edition editor education email extent faith floruit forename genName geoDecl label name nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName placeName pubPlace publisher region residence roleName s settlement sex socecStatus street surname |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq = ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

## macro.phraseSeq.limited

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | age authority classCode funder langKnown language locale principal resp sponsor |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | [model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.model.limitedPhrase) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

## macro.specialPara

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | change item licence note |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.divPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.specialPara =  (  text  | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) | [model.phrase](#TEI.model.phrase) | [model.inter](#TEI.model.inter) | [model.divPart](#TEI.model.divPart) | [model.global](#TEI.model.global) )\* |

## macro.xtext

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | c |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.xtext = ( text | [model.gLike](#TEI.model.gLike) )\* |

# Datatypes

## teidata.certainty

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content>  <valList type="closed">   <valItem ident="high"/>   <valItem ident="medium"/>   <valItem ident="low"/>   <valItem ident="unknown"/>  </valList> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, data.probability may be used instead or in addition. |

## teidata.count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * age/@value * tagUsage/@occurs * tagUsage/@withId |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |
| **Note** | Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted |

## teidata.enumerated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * availability/@status * correction/@status * correction/@method * divGen/@type * geoDecl/@datum * hyphenation/@eol * idno/@type * normalization/@method * pc/@force * pc/@unit * personGrp/@role * personGrp/@age * punctuation/@marks * punctuation/@placement * quotation/@marks * relation/@name * teiHeader/@type * timeline/@unit |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.enumerated = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word matching the pattern defined for this datatype: for example it cannot include whitespace but may begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element. |

## teidata.interval

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.interval** defines attribute values used to express an interval value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * when/@interval |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="float"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="regular"/>    <valItem ident="irregular"/>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.interval = xsd:float | ( "regular" | "irregular" | "unknown" ) |
| **Note** | Any value greater than zero or any one of the values regular, irregular, unknown. |

## teidata.language

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * langKnowledge/@tags * langKnown/@tag * language/@ident |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="language"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident=""/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" ) |
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.  **language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.  **script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.  **region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.  **variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.  **extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.  **private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.  There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications. Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header. Examples include  sn Shona  zh-TW Taiwanese  zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong  en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone  pl Polish  es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico  es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America  The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/Overview.en.php). |

## teidata.name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * application/@ident * tagUsage/@gi |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="Name"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.name = xsd:Name |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

## teidata.namespace

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C [Namespaces in XML](http://www.w3.org/TR/1999/REC-xml-names-19990114/) Technical Recommendation. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * namespace/@name |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt) |

## teidata.numeric

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="double"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>   <dataRef name="decimal"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.numeric =  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

## teidata.outputMeasurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.outputMeasurement =  token  {  pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The TEI Logo</**head**>  <**figDesc**>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <**mentioned**>TEI</**mentioned**> in    between and <**mentioned**>text encoding initiative</**mentioned**> underneath, all on a white    background.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **height**="600px"   **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" **width**="600px"/> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](http://www.w3.org/TR/2005/WD-css3-values-20050726/#numbers0). |

## teidata.pattern

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings)  [Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression#Basic_concepts)  This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

## teidata.pointer

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * change/@target * classCode/@scheme * event/@where * keywords/@scheme * normalization/@source * occupation/@scheme * occupation/@code * relation/@active * relation/@mutual * relation/@passive * socecStatus/@scheme * socecStatus/@code * tagUsage/@render * timeline/@origin * w/@lemmaRef * when/@since |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by  [RFC 3986](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt) *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3987.txt) *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/ |

## teidata.probCert

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>   <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.probCert = [teidata.probability](#TEI.teidata.probability) | [teidata.certainty](#TEI.teidata.certainty) |

## teidata.probability

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="double"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.probability = xsd:double |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true. |

## teidata.replacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.replacement = text |

## teidata.sex

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * personGrp/@sex * sex/@value |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.sex = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* <http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* <http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. |

## teidata.temporal.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * when/@absolute |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.temporal.w3c =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

## teidata.text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * w/@lemma |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="string"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.text = string |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

## teidata.truthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * listChange/@ordered * pc/@pre * tagsDecl/@partial |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue. |

## teidata.version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * TEI/@version * teiCorpus/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } |
| **Note** | The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied. |

## teidata.versionNumber

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * application/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.versionNumber =  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}" } |

## teidata.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement:   * gap/@reason * langKnown/@level * org/@role * personGrp/@size |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |